MATHEMATICS

Textbook for Class XII

PART II

12080

ਇਹ ਪੁਸਤਕ ਪੰਜਾਬ ਸਰਕਾਰ ਦੁਆਰਾ ਮੁਫ਼ਤ ਦਿੱਤੀ ਜਾਣੀ ਹੈ ਅਤੇ ਵਿਕਰੀ ਲਈ ਨਹੀਂ ਹੈ।

Punjab School Education Board

Sahibzada Ajit Singh Nagar

First Edition : 2015............................35,000 Copies
Revised Edition : 2023........................18,000 Copies

[This book has been adopted with the kind permission of the National Council of Educational Research and Training, New Delhi]

Co-ordinator : **Pritpal Singh**
Subject Expert, P.S.Edu.B.

Aritst : **Manjeet Singh Dhillon**

Published by : **Secretary,** Punjab School Education Board, Vidya Bhavan, Phase-8, Sahibzada Ajit Singh Nagar-160062 & Printed at S G Print Packs Pvt. Ltd., NOIDA.

FOREWORD

Punjab School Education Board has continuously been engaged in preparation and review of syllabi and textbooks. In today's scenario, imparting right education to students is the joint responsibility of teachers as well as parents. With a view to carry out entrusted responsibility, some important changes pertaining to present day educational requirements have been made in the textbooks and syllabus in accordance with NCF 2005.

Mathematics has an important place in school curriculum and a good textbook is the first requisite to achieve desired learning outcomes. Therefore, the content matter of Mathematics for the class XII has been so arranged so as to develop reasoning power of the students and to enhance their understanding of the subject. Graded questions and exercise have been given to suit the mental level of the students. This book is prepared by NCERT, New Delhi for class XII and is being published by Punjab School Education Board with the permission of NCERT, New Delhi.

Every effort has been made to make the book useful for students as well as for the teachers. However, constructive suggestions for its further improvement would be gratefully acknowledged.

Chairman
Punjab School Education Board

'ਸਮਾਜਿਕ ਨਿਆ, ਅਧਿਕਾਰਤਾ ਅਤੇ ਘੱਟ ਗਿਣਤੀ ਵਿਭਾਗ',ਪੰਜਾਬ।

Textbook Development Committee

Chairperson, Advisory Group in Science and Mathematics

J.V. Narlikar, *Emeritus Professor,* Inter-University Centre for Astronomy and Astrophysics (IUCAA), Ganeshkhind, Pune University, Pune

Chief Advisor

P.K. Jain, *Professor,* Department of Mathematics, University of Delhi, Delhi

Chief Coordinator

Hukum Singh, *Professor* and *Head,* DESM, NCERT, New Delhi

Members

A.K. Rajput, *Reader,* RIE, Bhopal, M.P.
Arun Pal Singh, *Sr. Lecturer,* Department of Mathematics, Dayal Singh College, University of Delhi, Delhi
B.S.P. Raju, *Professor,* RIE Mysore, Karnataka
C.R. Pradeep, *Assistant Professor,* Department of Mathematics, Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore, Karnataka
D.R. Sharma *P.G.T.,* Jawahar Navodaya Vidyalaya, Mungeshpur, Delhi
R.P. Maurya, *Reader,* DESM, NCERT, New Delhi
Ram Avtar, *Professor* (Retd.) and *Consultant,* DESM, NCERT, New Delhi
S.K. Kaushik, *Reader,* Department of Mathematics, Kirori Mal College, University of Delhi, Delhi
S.K.S. Gautam, *Professor,* DESM, NCERT, New Delhi
S.S. Khare, *Pro-Vice-Chancellor,* NEHU, Tura Campus, Meghalaya
Sangeeta Arora, *P.G.T.,* Apeejay School, Saket, New Delhi
Shailja Tewari, *P.G.T.,* Kendriya Vidyalaya, Barkakana, Hazaribagh, Jharkhand
Sunil Bajaj, *Sr. Specialist,* SCERT, Gurgaon, Haryana
Vinayak Bujade, *Lecturer,* Vidarbha Buniyadi Junior College, Sakkardara Chowk, Nagpur, Maharashtra

Member-coordinator

V.P. Singh, *Reader,* DESM, NCERT, New Delhi

Contents

Part II

7. Integrals **225**

- 7.1 Introduction 225
- 7.2 Integration as an Inverse Process of Differentiation 226
- 7.3 Methods of Integration 235
- 7.4 Integrals of Some Particular Functions 243
- 7.5 Integration by Partial Fractions 252
- 7.6 Integration by Parts 259
- 7.7 Definite Integral 267
- 7.8 Fundamental Theorem of Calculus 267
- 7.9 Evaluation of Definite Integrals by Substitution 271
- 7.10 Some Properties of Definite Integrals 273

8. Application of Integrals **292**

- 8.1 Introduction 292
- 8.2 Area under Simple Curves 292

9. Differential Equations **300**

- 9.1 Introduction 300
- 9.2 Basic Concepts 300
- 9.3 General and Particular Solutions of a Differential Equation 304
- 9.4 Methods of Solving First Order, First Degree Differential Equations 306

10. Vector Algebra **338**

- 10.1 Introduction 338
- 10.2 Some Basic Concepts 338
- 10.3 Types of Vectors 341
- 10.4 Addition of Vectors 343
- 10.5 Multiplication of a Vector by a Scalar 346
- 10.6 Product of Two Vectors 355

11. Three Dimensional Geometry **377**
11.1 Introduction 377
11.2 Direction Cosines and Direction Ratios of a Line 377
11.3 Equation of a Line in Space 381
11.4 Angle between Two Lines 383
11.5 Shortest Distance between Two Lines 385

12. Linear Programming **394**
12.1 Introduction 394
12.2 Linear Programming Problem and its Mathematical Formulation 395

13. Probability **406**
13.1 Introduction 406
13.2 Conditional Probability 406
13.3 Multiplication Theorem on Probability 415
13.4 Independent Events 417
13.5 Bayes' Theorem 423

Answers **439**

12080CH07

Chapter **7**

INTEGRALS

❖ *Just as a mountaineer climbs a mountain – because it is there, so a good mathematics student studies new material because it is there.* — *JAMES B. BRISTOL* ❖

7.1 Introduction

G .W. Leibnitz (1646 -1716)

Differential Calculus is centred on the concept of the derivative. The original motivation for the derivative was the problem of defining tangent lines to the graphs of functions and calculating the slope of such lines. Integral Calculus is motivated by the problem of defining and calculating the area of the region bounded by the graph of the functions.

If a function f is differentiable in an interval I, i.e., its derivative f' exists at each point of I, then a natural question arises that given f' at each point of I, can we determine the function? The functions that could possibly have given function as a derivative are called anti derivatives (or primitive) of the function. Further, the formula that gives all these anti derivatives is called the ***indefinite integral*** of the function and such process of finding anti derivatives is called integration. Such type of problems arise in many practical situations. For instance, if we know the instantaneous velocity of an object at any instant, then there arises a natural question, i.e., can we determine the position of the object at any instant? There are several such practical and theoretical situations where the process of integration is involved. The development of integral calculus arises out of the efforts of solving the problems of the following types:

(a) the problem of finding a function whenever its derivative is given,

(b) the problem of finding the area bounded by the graph of a function under certain conditions.

These two problems lead to the two forms of the integrals, e.g., indefinite and definite integrals, which together constitute the ***Integral Calculus***.

There is a connection, known as the ***Fundamental Theorem of Calculus***, between indefinite integral and definite integral which makes the definite integral as a practical tool for science and engineering. The definite integral is also used to solve many interesting problems from various disciplines like economics, finance and probability.

In this Chapter, we shall confine ourselves to the study of indefinite and definite integrals and their elementary properties including some techniques of integration.

7.2 Integration as an Inverse Process of Differentiation

Integration is the inverse process of differentiation. Instead of differentiating a function, we are given the derivative of a function and asked to find its primitive, i.e., the original function. Such a process is called *integration* or *anti differentiation*.
Let us consider the following examples:

We know that
$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x \quad \text{... (1)}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^3}{3}\right) = x^2 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

and
$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x \quad \text{... (3)}$$

We observe that in (1), the function cos x is the derived function of sin x. We say that sin x is an anti derivative (or an integral) of cos x. Similarly, in (2) and (3), $\frac{x^3}{3}$ and e^x are the anti derivatives (or integrals) of x^2 and e^x, respectively. Again, we note that for any real number C, treated as constant function, its derivative is zero and hence, we can write (1), (2) and (3) as follows :

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x + \text{C}) = \cos x, \ \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^3}{3} + \text{C}\right) = x^2 \text{ and } \frac{d}{dx}(e^x + \text{C}) = e^x$$

Thus, anti derivatives (or integrals) of the above cited functions are not unique. Actually, there exist infinitely many anti derivatives of each of these functions which can be obtained by choosing C arbitrarily from the set of real numbers. For this reason C is customarily referred to as ***arbitrary constant***. In fact, C is the ***parameter*** by varying which one gets different anti derivatives (or integrals) of the given function.

More generally, if there is a function F such that $\frac{d}{dx}\text{F}(x) = f(x)$, $\forall x \in \text{I}$ (interval), then for any arbitrary real number C, (also called *constant of integration*)

$$\frac{d}{dx}[\text{F}(x) + \text{C}] = f(x), \ x \in \text{I}$$

Thus, $\{F + C, C \in \mathbf{R}\}$ denotes a family of anti derivatives of f.

Remark Functions with same derivatives differ by a constant. To show this, let g and h be two functions having the same derivatives on an interval I.

Consider the function $f = g - h$ defined by $f(x) = g(x) - h(x)$, $\forall x \in I$

Then $\frac{df}{dx} = f' = g' - h'$ giving $f'(x) = g'(x) - h'(x)$ $\forall x \in I$

or $f'(x) = 0$, $\forall x \in I$ by hypothesis,

i.e., the rate of change of f with respect to x is zero on I and hence f is constant.

In view of the above remark, it is justified to infer that the family $\{F + C, C \in \mathbf{R}\}$ provides all possible anti derivatives of f.

We introduce a new symbol, namely, $\int f(x)\, dx$ which will represent the entire class of anti derivatives read as the indefinite integral of f with respect to x.

Symbolically, we write $\int f(x)\, dx = F(x) + C$.

Notation Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x)$, we write $y = \int f(x)\, dx$.

For the sake of convenience, we mention below the following symbols/terms/phrases with their meanings as given in the Table (7.1).

Table 7.1

Symbols/Terms/Phrases	**Meaning**
$\int f(x)\, dx$	Integral of f with respect to x
$f(x)$ in $\int f(x)\, dx$	Integrand
x in $\int f(x)\, dx$	Variable of integration
Integrate	Find the integral
An integral of f	A function F such that $F'(x) = f(x)$
Integration	The process of finding the integral
Constant of Integration	Any real number C, considered as constant function

We already know the formulae for the derivatives of many important functions. From these formulae, we can write down immediately the corresponding formulae (referred to as standard formulae) for the integrals of these functions, as listed below which will be used to find integrals of other functions.

Derivatives	**Integrals (Anti derivatives)**
(i) $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}\right) = x^n$;	$\int x^n\, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C,\ n \neq -1$
Particularly, we note that $\frac{d}{dx}(x) = 1$;	$\int dx = x + C$
(ii) $\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x$;	$\int \cos x\, dx = \sin x + C$
(iii) $\frac{d}{dx}(-\cos x) = \sin x$;	$\int \sin x\, dx = -\cos x + C$
(iv) $\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x$;	$\int \sec^2 x\, dx = \tan x + C$
(v) $\frac{d}{dx}(-\cot x) = \operatorname{cosec}^2 x$;	$\int \operatorname{cosec}^2 x\, dx = -\cot x + C$
(vi) $\frac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x \tan x$;	$\int \sec x \tan x\, dx = \sec x + C$
(vii) $\frac{d}{dx}(-\operatorname{cosec} x) = \operatorname{cosec} x \cot x$;	$\int \operatorname{cosec} x \cot x\, dx = -\operatorname{cosec} x + C$
(viii) $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\sin^{-1} x\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$;	$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = \sin^{-1} x + C$
(ix) $\frac{d}{dx}\left(-\cos^{-1} x\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$;	$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = -\cos^{-1} x + C$
(x) $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\tan^{-1} x\right) = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$;	$\int \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = \tan^{-1} x + C$
(xi) $\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x$;	$\int e^x dx = e^x + C$

(xii) $\frac{d}{dx}(\log|x|) = \frac{1}{x}$; $\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \log|x| + C$

(xiii) $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{a^x}{\log a}\right) = a^x$; $\int a^x\,dx = \frac{a^x}{\log a} + C$

Note In practice, we normally do not mention the interval over which the various functions are defined. However, in any specific problem one has to keep it in mind.

7.2.1 *Some properties of indefinite integral*

In this sub section, we shall derive some properties of indefinite integrals.

(I) The process of differentiation and integration are inverses of each other in the sense of the following results :

$$\frac{d}{dx}\int f(x)\,dx = f(x)$$

and $\int f'(x)\,dx = f(x) + C$, where C is any arbitrary constant.

Proof Let F be any anti derivative of f, i.e.,

$$\frac{d}{dx}F(x) = f(x)$$

Then $\int f(x)\,dx = F(x) + C$

Therefore
$$\frac{d}{dx}\int f(x)\,dx = \frac{d}{dx}(F(x) + C)$$
$$= \frac{d}{dx}F(x) = f(x)$$

Similarly, we note that

$$f'(x) = \frac{d}{dx}f(x)$$

and hence $\int f'(x)\,dx = f(x) + C$

where C is arbitrary constant called constant of integration.

(II) Two indefinite integrals with the same derivative lead to the same family of curves and so they are equivalent.

Proof Let f and g be two functions such that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\int f(x)\,dx = \frac{d}{dx}\int g(x)\,dx$$

or $$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\int f(x)\,dx - \int g(x)\,dx\right] = 0$$

Hence $\int f(x)\,dx - \int g(x)\,dx =$ C, where C is any real number (Why?)

or $$\int f(x)\,dx = \int g(x)\,dx + C$$

So the families of curves $\left\{\int f(x)\,dx + C_1, C_1 \in R\right\}$

and $\left\{\int g(x)\,dx + C_2, C_2 \in R\right\}$ are identical.

Hence, in this sense, $\int f(x)\,dx$ and $\int g(x)\,dx$ are equivalent.

> **Note** The equivalence of the families $\left\{\int f(x)\,dx + C_1, C_1 \in \mathbf{R}\right\}$ and $\left\{\int g(x)\,dx + C_2, C_2 \in \mathbf{R}\right\}$ is customarily expressed by writing $\int f(x)\,dx = \int g(x)\,dx$, without mentioning the parameter.

(III) $\int [f(x) + g(x)]\,dx = \int f(x)\,dx + \int g(x)\,dx$

Proof By Property (I), we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\int [f(x) + g(x)]\,dx\right] = f(x) + g(x) \quad \text{... (1)}$$

On the otherhand, we find that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\int f(x)\,dx + \int g(x)\,dx\right] = \frac{d}{dx}\int f(x)\,dx + \frac{d}{dx}\int g(x)\,dx$$

$$= f(x) + g(x) \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Thus, in view of Property (II), it follows by (1) and (2) that

$$\int (f(x) + g(x))\,dx = \int f(x)\,dx + \int g(x)\,dx.$$

(IV) For any real number k, $\int k\, f(x)\,dx = k\int f(x)\,dx$

Proof By the Property (I), $\frac{d}{dx}\int k\ f(x)\ dx = k\ f(x)$.

Also $\frac{d}{dx}\left[k\int f(x)\ dx\right] = k\frac{d}{dx}\int f(x)\ dx = k\ f(x)$

Therefore, using the Property (II), we have $\int k\ f(x)\ dx = k\int f(x)\ dx$.

(V) Properties (III) and (IV) can be generalised to a finite number of functions $f_1, f_2, ..., f_n$ and the real numbers, $k_1, k_2, ..., k_n$ giving

$$\int\left[k_1 f_1(x) + k_2 f_2\ (x) + ... + k_n f_n(x)\right] dx$$

$$= k_1\int f_1(x)\ dx + k_2\int f_2\ (x)\ dx + ... + k_n\int f_n(x)\ dx.$$

To find an anti derivative of a given function, we search intuitively for a function whose derivative is the given function. The search for the requisite function for finding an anti derivative is known as integration by the method of inspection. We illustrate it through some examples.

Example 1 Write an anti derivative for each of the following functions using the method of inspection:

(i) $\cos 2x$ (ii) $3x^2 + 4x^3$ (iii) $\frac{1}{x}, x \neq 0$

Solution

(i) We look for a function whose derivative is $\cos 2x$. Recall that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\sin 2x = 2\cos 2x$$

or $$\cos 2x = \frac{1}{2}\frac{d}{dx}(\sin 2x) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{2}\sin 2x\right)$$

Therefore, an anti derivative of $\cos 2x$ is $\frac{1}{2}\sin 2x$.

(ii) We look for a function whose derivative is $3x^2 + 4x^3$. Note that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(x^3 + x^4\right) = 3x^2 + 4x^3.$$

Therefore, an anti derivative of $3x^2 + 4x^3$ is $x^3 + x^4$.

(iii) We know that

$$\frac{d}{dx}(\log x)=\frac{1}{x},\ x>0 \text{ and } \frac{d}{dx}[\log(-x)]=\frac{1}{-x}(-1)=\frac{1}{x},\ x<0$$

Combining above, we get $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\log|x|\right)=\frac{1}{x},\ x\neq 0$

Therefore, $\int\frac{1}{x}\,dx=\log|x|$ is one of the anti derivatives of $\frac{1}{x}$.

Example 2 Find the following integrals:

(i) $\int\frac{x^3-1}{x^2}\,dx$ (ii) $\int(x^{\frac{2}{3}}+1)\,dx$ (iii) $\int(x^{\frac{3}{2}}+2\,e^x-\frac{1}{x})\,dx$

Solution

(i) We have

$$\int\frac{x^3-1}{x^2}\,dx=\int x\,dx-\int x^{-2}\,dx \quad \text{(by Property V)}$$

$$=\left(\frac{x^{1+1}}{1+1}+C_1\right)-\left(\frac{x^{-2+1}}{-2+1}+C_2\right);\ C_1, C_2 \text{ are constants of integration}$$

$$=\frac{x^2}{2}+C_1-\frac{x^{-1}}{-1}-C_2=\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{1}{x}+C_1-C_2$$

$$=\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{1}{x}+C, \text{ where } C=C_1-C_2 \text{ is another constant of integration.}$$

Note From now onwards, we shall write only one constant of integration in the final answer.

(ii) We have

$$\int(x^{\frac{2}{3}}+1)\,dx=\int x^{\frac{2}{3}}\,dx+\int dx$$

$$=\frac{x^{\frac{2}{3}+1}}{\frac{2}{3}+1}+x+C=\frac{3}{5}x^{\frac{5}{3}}+x+C$$

(iii) We have $\int (x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2e^x - \frac{1}{x})\, dx = \int x^{\frac{3}{2}}\, dx + \int 2e^x\, dx - \int \frac{1}{x}\, dx$

$$= \frac{x^{\frac{3}{2}+1}}{\frac{3}{2}+1} + 2e^x - \log|x| + C$$

$$= \frac{2}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}} + 2e^x - \log|x| + C$$

Example 3 Find the following integrals:

(i) $\int (\sin x + \cos x)\, dx$ (ii) $\int \text{cosec } x\, (\text{cosec } x + \cot x)\, dx$

(iii) $\int \frac{1 - \sin x}{\cos^2 x}\, dx$

Solution

(i) We have

$$\int (\sin x + \cos x)\, dx = \int \sin x\, dx + \int \cos x\, dx$$
$$= -\cos x + \sin x + C$$

(ii) We have

$$\int (\text{cosec } x\, (\text{cosec } x + \cot x)\, dx = \int \text{cosec}^2 x\, dx + \int \text{cosec } x \cot x\, dx$$
$$= -\cot x - \text{cosec } x + C$$

(iii) We have

$$\int \frac{1 - \sin x}{\cos^2 x}\, dx = \int \frac{1}{\cos^2 x}\, dx - \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos^2 x}\, dx$$
$$= \int \sec^2 x\, dx - \int \tan x \sec x\, dx$$
$$= \tan x - \sec x + C$$

Example 4 Find the anti derivative F of f defined by $f(x) = 4x^3 - 6$, where F (0) = 3

Solution One anti derivative of $f(x)$ is $x^4 - 6x$ since

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^4 - 6x) = 4x^3 - 6$$

Therefore, the anti derivative F is given by

$$F(x) = x^4 - 6x + C, \text{ where C is constant.}$$

Given that $F(0) = 3$, which gives,

$$3 = 0 - 6 \times 0 + C \quad \text{or} \quad C = 3$$

Hence, the required anti derivative is the unique function F defined by

$$F(x) = x^4 - 6x + 3.$$

Remarks

(i) We see that if F is an anti derivative of f, then so is F + C, where C is any constant. Thus, if we know one anti derivative F of a function f, we can write down an infinite number of anti derivatives of f by adding any constant to F expressed by $F(x) + C$, $C \in \mathbf{R}$. In applications, it is often necessary to satisfy an additional condition which then determines a specific value of C giving unique anti derivative of the given function.

(ii) Sometimes, F is not expressible in terms of elementary functions viz., polynomial, logarithmic, exponential, trigonometric functions and their inverses etc. We are therefore blocked for finding $\int f(x)\,dx$. For example, it is not possible to find $\int e^{-x^2}\,dx$ by inspection since we can not find a function whose derivative is e^{-x^2}

(iii) When the variable of integration is denoted by a variable other than x, the integral formulae are modified accordingly. For instance

$$\int y^4\,dy = \frac{y^{4+1}}{4+1} + C = \frac{1}{5}y^5 + C$$

EXERCISE 7.1

Find an anti derivative (or integral) of the following functions by the method of inspection.

1. $\sin 2x$ **2.** $\cos 3x$ **3.** e^{2x}

4. $(ax + b)^2$ **5.** $\sin 2x - 4\,e^{3x}$

Find the following integrals in Exercises 6 to 20:

6. $\int (4\,e^{3x} + 1)\,dx$ **7.** $\int x^2 (1 - \frac{1}{x^2})\,dx$ **8.** $\int (ax^2 + bx + c)\,dx$

9. $\int (2x^2 + e^x)\,dx$ **10.** $\int \left(\sqrt{x} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)^2 dx$ **11.** $\int \frac{x^3 + 5x^2 - 4}{x^2}\,dx$

12. $\int \frac{x^3 + 3x + 4}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$ **13.** $\int \frac{x^3 - x^2 + x - 1}{x - 1}\,dx$ **14.** $\int (1 - x)\sqrt{x}\,dx$

15. $\int \sqrt{x}\,(3x^2 + 2x + 3)\,dx$

16. $\int (2x - 3\cos x + e^x)\,dx$

17. $\int (2x^2 - 3\sin x + 5\sqrt{x})\,dx$

18. $\int \sec x\,(\sec x + \tan x)\,dx$

19. $\int \frac{\sec^2 x}{\csc^2 x}\,dx$

20. $\int \frac{2 - 3\sin x}{\cos^2 x}\,dx.$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 21 and 22.

21. The anti derivative of $\left(\sqrt{x} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\right)$ equals

(A) $\frac{1}{3}x^{\frac{1}{3}} + 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} + C$

(B) $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{2}{3}} + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + C$

(C) $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} + C$

(D) $\frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{1}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}} + C$

22. If $\frac{d}{dx}f(x) = 4x^3 - \frac{3}{x^4}$ such that $f(2) = 0$. Then $f(x)$ is

(A) $x^4 + \frac{1}{x^3} - \frac{129}{8}$

(B) $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^4} + \frac{129}{8}$

(C) $x^4 + \frac{1}{x^3} + \frac{129}{8}$

(D) $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^4} - \frac{129}{8}$

7.3 Methods of Integration

In previous section, we discussed integrals of those functions which were readily obtainable from derivatives of some functions. It was based on inspection, i.e., on the search of a function F whose derivative is f which led us to the integral of f. However, this method, which depends on inspection, is not very suitable for many functions. Hence, we need to develop additional techniques or methods for finding the integrals by reducing them into standard forms. Prominent among them are methods based on:

1. Integration by Substitution
2. Integration using Partial Fractions
3. Integration by Parts

7.3.1 *Integration by substitution*

In this section, we consider the method of integration by substitution.

The given integral $\int f(x)\,dx$ can be transformed into another form by changing the independent variable x to t by substituting $x = g(t)$.

Consider $$I = \int f(x)\, dx$$

Put $x = g(t)$ so that $\frac{dx}{dt} = g'(t)$.

We write $$dx = g'(t)\, dt$$

Thus $$I = \int f(x)\, dx = \int f(g(t))\, g'(t)\, dt$$

This change of variable formula is one of the important tools available to us in the name of integration by substitution. It is often important to guess what will be the useful substitution. Usually, we make a substitution for a function whose derivative also occurs in the integrand as illustrated in the following examples.

Example 5 Integrate the following functions w.r.t. x:

(i) $\sin mx$ (ii) $2x \sin (x^2 + 1)$

(iii) $\dfrac{\tan^4 \sqrt{x} \sec^2 \sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}$ (iv) $\dfrac{\sin (\tan^{-1} x)}{1 + x^2}$

Solution

(i) We know that derivative of mx is m. Thus, we make the substitution $mx = t$ so that $mdx = dt$.

Therefore, $$\int \sin mx\, dx = \frac{1}{m}\int \sin t\, dt = -\frac{1}{m}\cos t + C = -\frac{1}{m}\cos mx + C$$

(ii) Derivative of $x^2 + 1$ is $2x$. Thus, we use the substitution $x^2 + 1 = t$ so that $2x\, dx = dt$.

Therefore, $$\int 2x \sin (x^2 + 1)\, dx = \int \sin t\, dt = -\cos t + C = -\cos (x^2 + 1) + C$$

(iii) Derivative of $\sqrt{x}$ is $\frac{1}{2} x^{-\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$. Thus, we use the substitution

$\sqrt{x} = t$ so that $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}} dx = dt$ giving $dx = 2t\, dt$.

Thus, $$\int \frac{\tan^4 \sqrt{x} \sec^2 \sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}} dx = \int \frac{2t \tan^4 t \sec^2 t\, dt}{t} = 2\int \tan^4 t\, \sec^2 t\, dt$$

Again, we make another substitution $\tan t = u$ so that $\sec^2 t\, dt = du$

Therefore, $2\int \tan^4 t \sec^2 t \, dt = 2\int u^4 \, du = 2\frac{u^5}{5} + C$

$$= \frac{2}{5}\tan^5 t + C \text{ (since } u = \tan t)$$

$$= \frac{2}{5}\tan^5 \sqrt{x} + C \text{ (since } t = \sqrt{x})$$

Hence, $\int \frac{\tan^4 \sqrt{x} \sec^2 \sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}} dx = \frac{2}{5}\tan^5 \sqrt{x} + C$

Alternatively, make the substitution $\tan\sqrt{x} = t$

(iv) Derivative of $\tan^{-1}x = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$. Thus, we use the substitution

$$\tan^{-1} x = t \text{ so that } \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = dt.$$

Therefore , $\int \frac{\sin(\tan^{-1}x)}{1+x^2} dx = \int \sin t \, dt = -\cos t + C = -\cos(\tan^{-1}x) + C$

Now, we discuss some important integrals involving trigonometric functions and their standard integrals using substitution technique. These will be used later without reference.

(i) $\int \tan x \, dx = \log|\sec x| + C$

We have

$$\int \tan x \, dx = \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} dx$$

Put $\cos x = t$ so that $\sin x \, dx = -dt$

Then $\int \tan x \, dx = -\int \frac{dt}{t} = -\log|t| + C = -\log|\cos x| + C$

or $\int \tan x \, dx = \log|\sec x| + C$

(ii) $\int \cot x \, dx = \log|\sin x| + C$

We have $\int \cot x \, dx = \int \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} dx$

Put $\sin x = t$ so that $\cos x\, dx = dt$

Then $$\int \cot x\, dx = \int \frac{dt}{t} = \log|t| + C = \log|\sin x| + C$$

(iii) $\int \sec x\, dx = \log|\sec x + \tan x| + C$

We have

$$\int \sec x\, dx = \int \frac{\sec x\,(\sec x + \tan x)}{\sec x + \tan x}\, dx$$

Put $\sec x + \tan x = t$ so that $\sec x\,(\tan x + \sec x)\, dx = dt$

Therefore, $\int \sec x\, dx = \int \frac{dt}{t} = \log|t| + C = \log|\sec x + \tan x| + C$

(iv) $\int \operatorname{cosec} x\, dx = \log|\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x| + C$

We have

$$\int \operatorname{cosec} x\, dx = \int \frac{\operatorname{cosec} x\,(\operatorname{cosec} x + \cot x)}{(\operatorname{cosec} x + \cot x)}\, dx$$

Put $\operatorname{cosec} x + \cot x = t$ so that $-\operatorname{cosec} x\,(\operatorname{cosec} x + \cot x)\, dx = dt$

So $$\int \operatorname{cosec} x\, dx = -\int \frac{dt}{t} = -\log|t| = -\log|\operatorname{cosec} x + \cot x| + C$$

$$= -\log\left|\frac{\operatorname{cosec}^2 x - \cot^2 x}{\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x}\right| + C$$

$$= \log|\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x| + C$$

Example 6 Find the following integrals:

(i) $\int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x\, dx$ (ii) $\int \frac{\sin x}{\sin (x + a)}\, dx$ (iii) $\int \frac{1}{1 + \tan x}\, dx$

Solution

(i) We have

$$\int \sin^3 x \cos^2 x\, dx = \int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x\,(\sin x)\, dx$$

$$= \int (1 - \cos^2 x) \cos^2 x\,(\sin x)\, dx$$

Put $t = \cos x$ so that $dt = -\sin x\, dx$

Therefore, $\int \sin^2 x \cos^2 x \,(\sin x)\, dx = -\int (1-t^2)\, t^2\, dt$

$$= -\int (t^2 - t^4)\, dt = -\left(\frac{t^3}{3} - \frac{t^5}{5}\right) + C$$

$$= -\frac{1}{3}\cos^3 x + \frac{1}{5}\cos^5 x + C$$

(ii) Put $x + a = t$. Then $dx = dt$. Therefore

$$\int \frac{\sin x}{\sin (x+a)}\, dx = \int \frac{\sin (t-a)}{\sin t}\, dt$$

$$= \int \frac{\sin t \cos a - \cos t \sin a}{\sin t}\, dt$$

$$= \cos a \int dt - \sin a \int \cot t\, dt$$

$$= (\cos a)\, t - (\sin a)\left[\log \left|\sin t\right| + C_1\right]$$

$$= (\cos a)\,(x+a) - (\sin a)\left[\log \left|\sin (x+a)\right| + C_1\right]$$

$$= x \cos a + a \cos a - (\sin a) \log \left|\sin (x+a)\right| - C_1 \sin a$$

Hence, $\int \frac{\sin x}{\sin (x+a)}\, dx = x \cos a - \sin a \log |\sin (x+a)| + C,$

where, $C = -C_1 \sin a + a \cos a$, is another arbitrary constant.

(iii) $\int \frac{dx}{1+\tan x} = \int \frac{\cos x\, dx}{\cos x + \sin x}$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{(\cos x + \sin x + \cos x - \sin x)\, dx}{\cos x + \sin x}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\int dx + \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{\cos x - \sin x}{\cos x + \sin x}\, dx$$

$$= \frac{x}{2} + \frac{C_1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{\cos x - \sin x}{\cos x + \sin x}\, dx \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Now, consider $I = \int \frac{\cos x - \sin x}{\cos x + \sin x} dx$

Put $\cos x + \sin x = t$ so that $(\cos x - \sin x)\, dx = dt$

Therefore $I = \int \frac{dt}{t} = \log|t| + C_2 = \log|\cos x + \sin x| + C_2$

Putting it in (1), we get

$$\int \frac{dx}{1+\tan x} = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{C_1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\log|\cos x + \sin x| + \frac{C_2}{2}$$

$$= \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\log|\cos x + \sin x| + \frac{C_1}{2} + \frac{C_2}{2}$$

$$= \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\log|\cos x + \sin x| + C, \left(C = \frac{C_1}{2} + \frac{C_2}{2}\right)$$

EXERCISE 7.2

Integrate the functions in Exercises 1 to 37:

1. $\frac{2x}{1+x^2}$ **2.** $\frac{(\log x)^2}{x}$ **3.** $\frac{1}{x + x\log x}$

4. $\sin x \sin(\cos x)$ **5.** $\sin(ax+b)\cos(ax+b)$

6. $\sqrt{ax+b}$ **7.** $x\sqrt{x+2}$ **8.** $x\sqrt{1+2x^2}$

9. $(4x+2)\sqrt{x^2+x+1}$ **10.** $\frac{1}{x-\sqrt{x}}$ **11.** $\frac{x}{\sqrt{x+4}}, x > 0$

12. $(x^3-1)^{\frac{1}{3}} x^5$ **13.** $\frac{x^2}{(2+3x^3)^3}$ **14.** $\frac{1}{x(\log x)^m}, x > 0, m \neq 1$

15. $\frac{x}{9-4x^2}$ **16.** e^{2x+3} **17.** $\frac{x}{e^{x^2}}$

18. $\frac{e^{\tan^{-1}x}}{1+x^2}$ **19.** $\frac{e^{2x}-1}{e^{2x}+1}$ **20.** $\frac{e^{2x}-e^{-2x}}{e^{2x}+e^{-2x}}$

21. $\tan^2 (2x - 3)$ **22.** $\sec^2 (7 - 4x)$ **23.** $\dfrac{\sin^{-1}x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$

24. $\dfrac{2\cos x - 3\sin x}{6\cos x + 4\sin x}$ **25.** $\dfrac{1}{\cos^2 x\,(1-\tan x)^2}$ **26.** $\dfrac{\cos\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}$

27. $\sqrt{\sin 2x}\cos 2x$ **28.** $\dfrac{\cos x}{\sqrt{1+\sin x}}$ **29.** $\cot x \log \sin x$

30. $\dfrac{\sin x}{1+\cos x}$ **31.** $\dfrac{\sin x}{(1+\cos x)^2}$ **32.** $\dfrac{1}{1+\cot x}$

33. $\dfrac{1}{1-\tan x}$ **34.** $\dfrac{\sqrt{\tan x}}{\sin x \cos x}$ **35.** $\dfrac{(1+\log x)^2}{x}$

36. $\dfrac{(x+1)(x+\log x)^2}{x}$ **37.** $\dfrac{x^3\sin\left(\tan^{-1}x^4\right)}{1+x^8}$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 38 and 39.

38. $\int \dfrac{10x^9 + 10^x \log_e 10\, dx}{x^{10} + 10^x}$ equals

(A) $10^x - x^{10} + C$ (B) $10^x + x^{10} + C$

(C) $(10^x - x^{10})^{-1} + C$ (D) $\log (10^x + x^{10}) + C$

39. $\int \dfrac{dx}{\sin^2 x \cos^2 x}$ equals

(A) $\tan x + \cot x + C$ (B) $\tan x - \cot x + C$

(C) $\tan x \cot x + C$ (D) $\tan x - \cot 2x + C$

7.3.2 *Integration using trigonometric identities*

When the integrand involves some trigonometric functions, we use some known identities to find the integral as illustrated through the following example.

Example 7 Find (i) $\int \cos^2 x\, dx$ (ii) $\int \sin 2x \cos 3x\, dx$ (iii) $\int \sin^3 x\, dx$

Solution

(i) Recall the identity $\cos 2x = 2\cos^2 x - 1$, which gives

$$\cos^2 x = \frac{1+\cos 2x}{2}$$

Therefore, $$\int \cos^2 x\, dx = \frac{1}{2}\int (1+\cos 2x)\, dx = \frac{1}{2}\int dx + \frac{1}{2}\int \cos 2x\, dx$$

$$= \frac{x}{2} + \frac{1}{4}\sin 2x + C$$

(ii) Recall the identity $\sin x \cos y = \frac{1}{2}[\sin(x+y) + \sin(x-y)]$ (Why?)

Then $$\int \sin 2x \cos 3x\, dx = \frac{1}{2}\left[\int \sin 5x\, dx - \int \sin x\, dx\right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\left[-\frac{1}{5}\cos 5x + \cos x\right] + C$$

$$= -\frac{1}{10}\cos 5x + \frac{1}{2}\cos x + C$$

(iii) From the identity $\sin 3x = 3\sin x - 4\sin^3 x$, we find that

$$\sin^3 x = \frac{3\sin x - \sin 3x}{4}$$

Therefore, $$\int \sin^3 x\, dx = \frac{3}{4}\int \sin x\, dx - \frac{1}{4}\int \sin 3x\, dx$$

$$= -\frac{3}{4}\cos x + \frac{1}{12}\cos 3x + C$$

Alternatively, $\int \sin^3 x\, dx = \int \sin^2 x \sin x\, dx = \int (1-\cos^2 x)\sin x\, dx$

Put $\cos x = t$ so that $-\sin x\, dx = dt$

Therefore, $$\int \sin^3 x\, dx = -\int \left(1-t^2\right) dt = -\int dt + \int t^2\, dt = -t + \frac{t^3}{3} + C$$

$$= -\cos x + \frac{1}{3}\cos^3 x + C$$

Remark It can be shown using trigonometric identities that both answers are equivalent.

EXERCISE 7.3

Find the integrals of the functions in Exercises 1 to 22:

1. $\sin^2 (2x + 5)$ **2.** $\sin 3x \cos 4x$ **3.** $\cos 2x \cos 4x \cos 6x$

4. $\sin^3 (2x + 1)$ **5.** $\sin^3 x \cos^3 x$ **6.** $\sin x \sin 2x \sin 3x$

7. $\sin 4x \sin 8x$ **8.** $\dfrac{1-\cos x}{1+\cos x}$ **9.** $\dfrac{\cos x}{1+\cos x}$

10. $\sin^4 x$ **11.** $\cos^4 2x$ **12.** $\dfrac{\sin^2 x}{1+\cos x}$

13. $\dfrac{\cos 2x-\cos 2\alpha}{\cos x-\cos \alpha}$ **14.** $\dfrac{\cos x-\sin x}{1+\sin 2x}$ **15.** $\tan^3 2x \sec 2x$

16. $\tan^4 x$ **17.** $\dfrac{\sin^3 x+\cos^3 x}{\sin^2 x \cos^2 x}$ **18.** $\dfrac{\cos 2x+2\sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x}$

19. $\dfrac{1}{\sin x \cos^3 x}$ **20.** $\dfrac{\cos 2x}{(\cos x+\sin x)^2}$ **21.** $\sin^{-1} (\cos x)$

22. $\dfrac{1}{\cos (x-a) \cos (x-b)}$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 23 and 24.

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\sin^2 x-\cos^2 x}{\sin^2 x \cos^2 x}\, dx$ is equal to

(A) $\tan x + \cot x + C$ (B) $\tan x + \operatorname{cosec} x + C$

(C) $-\tan x + \cot x + C$ (D) $\tan x + \sec x + C$

24. $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^x(1+x)}{\cos^2 (e^x x)}\, dx$ equals

(A) $-\cot (ex^x) + C$ (B) $\tan (xe^x) + C$

(C) $\tan (e^x) + C$ (D) $\cot (e^x) + C$

7.4 Integrals of Some Particular Functions

In this section, we mention below some important formulae of integrals and apply them for integrating many other related standard integrals:

(1) $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x^2-a^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \log \left|\frac{x-a}{x+a}\right| + C$

(2) $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \log \left| \frac{a+x}{a-x} \right| + C$

(3) $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + a^2} = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + C$

(4) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \log \left| x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \right| + C$

(5) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + C$

(6) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} = \log \left| x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} \right| + C$

We now prove the above results:

(1) We have $\frac{1}{x^2 - a^2} = \frac{1}{(x-a)(x+a)}$

$$= \frac{1}{2a}\left[\frac{(x+a)-(x-a)}{(x-a)(x+a)}\right] = \frac{1}{2a}\left[\frac{1}{x-a} - \frac{1}{x+a}\right]$$

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - a^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\left[\int \frac{dx}{x-a} - \int \frac{dx}{x+a}\right]$

$$= \frac{1}{2a}\left[\log|(x-a)| - \log|(x+a)|\right] + C$$

$$= \frac{1}{2a} \log \left| \frac{x-a}{x+a} \right| + C$$

(2) In view of (1) above, we have

$$\frac{1}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\left[\frac{(a+x)+(a-x)}{(a+x)(a-x)}\right] = \frac{1}{2a}\left[\frac{1}{a-x} + \frac{1}{a+x}\right]$$

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\left[\int \frac{dx}{a-x} + \int \frac{dx}{a+x}\right]$

$$= \frac{1}{2a}[-\log|a-x| + \log|a+x|] + C$$

$$= \frac{1}{2a}\log\left|\frac{a+x}{a-x}\right| + C$$

Note The technique used in (1) will be explained in Section 7.5.

(3) Put $x = a \tan\theta$. Then $dx = a \sec^2\theta\, d\theta$.

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + a^2} = \int \frac{a\sec^2\theta\, d\theta}{a^2\tan^2\theta + a^2}$

$$= \frac{1}{a}\int d\theta = \frac{1}{a}\theta + C = \frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{a} + C$$

(4) Let $x = a\sec\theta$. Then $dx = a\sec\theta\tan\theta\, d\theta$.

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \int \frac{a\sec\theta\tan\theta\, d\theta}{\sqrt{a^2\sec^2\theta - a^2}}$

$$= \int \sec\theta\, d\theta = \log|\sec\theta + \tan\theta| + C_1$$

$$= \log\left|\frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{\frac{x^2}{a^2} - 1}\right| + C_1$$

$$= \log\left|x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}\right| - \log|a| + C_1$$

$$= \log\left|x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}\right| + C, \text{ where } C = C_1 - \log|a|$$

(5) Let $x = a\sin\theta$. Then $dx = a\cos\theta\, d\theta$.

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \int \frac{a\cos\theta\, d\theta}{\sqrt{a^2 - a^2\sin^2\theta}}$

$$= \int d\theta = \theta + C = \sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a} + C$$

(6) Let $x = a\tan\theta$. Then $dx = a\sec^2\theta\, d\theta$.

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}} = \int \frac{a\sec^2\theta\, d\theta}{\sqrt{a^2\tan^2\theta + a^2}}$

$$= \int \sec\theta\, d\theta = \log|(\sec\theta + \tan\theta)| + C_1$$

$$= \log\left|\frac{x}{a} + \sqrt{\frac{x^2}{a^2}+1}\right| + C_1$$

$$= \log\left|x + \sqrt{x^2+a^2}\right| - \log|a| + C_1$$

$$= \log\left|x + \sqrt{x^2+a^2}\right| + C, \text{ where } C = C_1 - \log|a|$$

Applying these standard formulae, we now obtain some more formulae which are useful from applications point of view and can be applied directly to evaluate other integrals.

(7) To find the integral $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2+bx+c}$, we write

$$ax^2 + bx + c = a\left[x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x + \frac{c}{a}\right] = a\left[\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{c}{a} - \frac{b^2}{4a^2}\right)\right]$$

Now, put $x + \frac{b}{2a} = t$ so that $dx = dt$ and writing $\frac{c}{a} - \frac{b^2}{4a^2} = \pm k^2$. We find the integral reduced to the form $\frac{1}{a}\int \frac{dt}{t^2 \pm k^2}$ depending upon the sign of $\left(\frac{c}{a} - \frac{b^2}{4a^2}\right)$ and hence can be evaluated.

(8) To find the integral of the type $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}}$, proceeding as in (7), we obtain the integral using the standard formulae.

(9) To find the integral of the type $\int \frac{px+q}{ax^2+bx+c}dx$, where p, q, a, b, c are constants, we are to find real numbers A, B such that

$$px + q = A\frac{d}{dx}(ax^2+bx+c) + B = A(2ax+b) + B$$

To determine A and B, we equate from both sides the coefficients of x and the constant terms. A and B are thus obtained and hence the integral is reduced to one of the known forms.

(10) For the evaluation of the integral of the type $\int \frac{(px+q)\,dx}{\sqrt{ax^2+bx+c}}$, we proceed as in (9) and transform the integral into known standard forms.

Let us illustrate the above methods by some examples.

Example 8 Find the following integrals:

(i) $\int \frac{dx}{x^2-16}$ (ii) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2x-x^2}}$

Solution

(i) We have $\int \frac{dx}{x^2-16} = \int \frac{dx}{x^2-4^2} = \frac{1}{8}\log\left|\frac{x-4}{x+4}\right| + C$ [by 7.4 (1)]

(ii) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2x-x^2}} = \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-(x-1)^2}}$

Put $x - 1 = t$. Then $dx = dt$.

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{2x-x^2}} = \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{1-t^2}} = \sin^{-1}(t) + C$ [by 7.4 (5)]

$$= \sin^{-1}(x-1) + C$$

Example 9 Find the following integrals :

(i) $\int \frac{dx}{x^2-6x+13}$ (ii) $\int \frac{dx}{3x^2+13x-10}$ (iii) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{5x^2-2x}}$

Solution

(i) We have $x^2 - 6x + 13 = x^2 - 6x + 3^2 - 3^2 + 13 = (x-3)^2 + 4$

So, $\int \frac{dx}{x^2-6x+13} = \int \frac{1}{(x-3)^2+2^2}\,dx$

Let $x - 3 = t$. Then $dx = dt$

Therefore, $\int \frac{dx}{x^2-6x+13} = \int \frac{dt}{t^2+2^2} = \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{t}{2} + C$ [by 7.4 (3)]

$$= \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x-3}{2} + C$$

(ii) The given integral is of the form 7.4 (7). We write the denominator of the integrand,

$$3x^2+13x-10 = 3\left(x^2+\frac{13x}{3}-\frac{10}{3}\right)$$

$$= 3\left[\left(x+\frac{13}{6}\right)^2-\left(\frac{17}{6}\right)^2\right] \text{ (completing the square)}$$

Thus $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{3x^2+13x-10} = \frac{1}{3}\int\frac{dx}{\left(x+\frac{13}{6}\right)^2-\left(\frac{17}{6}\right)^2}$

Put $x+\frac{13}{6}=t$. Then $dx = dt$.

Therefore, $\displaystyle\int\frac{dx}{3x^2+13x-10} = \frac{1}{3}\int\frac{dt}{t^2-\left(\frac{17}{6}\right)^2}$

$$= \frac{1}{3\times 2\times\frac{17}{6}}\log\left|\frac{t-\frac{17}{6}}{t+\frac{17}{6}}\right|+C_1 \qquad \text{[by 7.4 (i)]}$$

$$= \frac{1}{17}\log\left|\frac{x+\frac{13}{6}-\frac{17}{6}}{x+\frac{13}{6}+\frac{17}{6}}\right|+C_1$$

$$= \frac{1}{17}\log\left|\frac{6x-4}{6x+30}\right|+C_1$$

$$= \frac{1}{17}\log\left|\frac{3x-2}{x+5}\right|+C_1+\frac{1}{17}\log\frac{1}{3}$$

$$= \frac{1}{17}\log\left|\frac{3x-2}{x+5}\right|+C, \text{ where } C = C_1+\frac{1}{17}\log\frac{1}{3}$$

(iii) We have $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{5x^2-2x}} = \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{5\left(x^2-\frac{2x}{5}\right)}}$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{\left(x-\frac{1}{5}\right)^2-\left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^2}} \text{ (completing the square)}$$

Put $x - \frac{1}{5} = t$. Then $dx = dt$.

Therefore,
$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{5x^2-2x}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{t^2-\left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^2}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \log \left| t + \sqrt{t^2-\left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^2} \right| + C \qquad \text{[by 7.4 (4)]}$$

$$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \log \left| x - \frac{1}{5} + \sqrt{x^2-\frac{2x}{5}} \right| + C$$

Example 10 Find the following integrals:

(i) $\int \frac{x+2}{2x^2+6x+5} dx$ (ii) $\int \frac{x+3}{\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}} dx$

Solution

(i) Using the formula 7.4 (9), we express

$$x + 2 = A \frac{d}{dx}\left(2x^2+6x+5\right) + B = A(4x+6) + B$$

Equating the coefficients of x and the constant terms from both sides, we get

$$4A = 1 \text{ and } 6A + B = 2 \quad \text{or} \quad A = \frac{1}{4} \text{ and } B = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Therefore,
$$\int \frac{x+2}{2x^2+6x+5} = \frac{1}{4}\int \frac{4x+6}{2x^2+6x+5} dx + \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dx}{2x^2+6x+5}$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} I_1 + \frac{1}{2} I_2 \quad \text{(say)} \qquad \ldots (1)$$

In I_1, put $2x^2 + 6x + 5 = t$, so that $(4x + 6)\, dx = dt$

Therefore, $$I_1 = \int \frac{dt}{t} = \log |t| + C_1$$

$$= \log |2x^2 + 6x + 5| + C_1 \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

and $$I_2 = \int \frac{dx}{2x^2 + 6x + 5} = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dx}{x^2 + 3x + \frac{5}{2}}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dx}{\left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2}$$

Put $x + \frac{3}{2} = t$, so that $dx = dt$, we get

$$I_2 = \frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dt}{t^2 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2} = \frac{1}{2 \times \frac{1}{2}} \tan^{-1} 2t + C_2 \qquad \text{[by 7.4 (3)]}$$

$$= \tan^{-1} 2\left(x + \frac{3}{2}\right) + C_2 = \tan^{-1}(2x + 3) + C_2 \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Using (2) and (3) in (1), we get

$$\int \frac{x + 2}{2x^2 + 6x + 5}\, dx = \frac{1}{4}\log\left|2x^2 + 6x + 5\right| + \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}(2x + 3) + C$$

where, $$C = \frac{C_1}{4} + \frac{C_2}{2}$$

(ii) This integral is of the form given in 7.4 (10). Let us express

$$x + 3 = A\frac{d}{dx}(5 - 4x - x^2) + B = A(-4 - 2x) + B$$

Equating the coefficients of x and the constant terms from both sides, we get

$-2A = 1$ and $-4A + B = 3$, i.e., $A = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $B = 1$

Therefore, $\int \frac{x+3}{\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}}\,dx = -\frac{1}{2}\int\frac{(-4-2x)\,dx}{\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}} + \int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}}$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}\,I_1 + I_2 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

In I_1, put $5 - 4x - x^2 = t$, so that $(-4-2x)\,dx = dt$.

Therefore, $I_1 = \int\frac{(-4-2x)\,dx}{\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}} = \int\frac{dt}{\sqrt{t}} = 2\sqrt{t} + C_1$

$$= 2\sqrt{5-4x-x^2} + C_1 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Now consider $I_2 = \int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}} = \int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{9-(x+2)^2}}$

Put $x + 2 = t$, so that $dx = dt$.

Therefore, $I_2 = \int\frac{dt}{\sqrt{3^2-t^2}} = \sin^{-1}\frac{t}{3} + C_2$ [by 7.4 (5)]

$$= \sin^{-1}\frac{x+2}{3} + C_2 \quad \text{... (3)}$$

Substituting (2) and (3) in (1), we obtain

$$\int\frac{x+3}{\sqrt{5-4x-x^2}} = -\sqrt{5-4x-x^2} + \sin^{-1}\frac{x+2}{3} + C, \text{ where } C = C_2 - \frac{C_1}{2}$$

EXERCISE 7.4

Integrate the functions in Exercises 1 to 23.

1. $\frac{3x^2}{x^6+1}$ **2.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}}$ **3.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(2-x)^2+1}}$

4. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{9-25x^2}}$ **5.** $\frac{3x}{1+2x^4}$ **6.** $\frac{x^2}{1-x^6}$

7. $\frac{x-1}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}$ **8.** $\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^6+a^6}}$ **9.** $\frac{\sec^2 x}{\sqrt{\tan^2 x+4}}$

10. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+2}}$ **11.** $\frac{1}{9x^2+6x+5}$ **12.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{7-6x-x^2}}$

13. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(x-1)(x-2)}}$ **14.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{8+3x-x^2}}$ **15.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{(x-a)(x-b)}}$

16. $\frac{4x+1}{\sqrt{2x^2+x-3}}$ **17.** $\frac{x+2}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}$ **18.** $\frac{5x-2}{1+2x+3x^2}$

19. $\frac{6x+7}{\sqrt{(x-5)(x-4)}}$ **20.** $\frac{x+2}{\sqrt{4x-x^2}}$ **21.** $\frac{x+2}{\sqrt{x^2+2x+3}}$

22. $\frac{x+3}{x^2-2x-5}$ **23.** $\frac{5x+3}{\sqrt{x^2+4x+10}}$.

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 24 and 25.

24. $\int \frac{dx}{x^2+2x+2}$ equals

(A) $x \tan^{-1}(x+1) + C$ (B) $\tan^{-1}(x+1) + C$

(C) $(x+1)\tan^{-1}x + C$ (D) $\tan^{-1}x + C$

25. $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{9x-4x^2}}$ equals

(A) $\frac{1}{9}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{9x-8}{8}\right)+C$ (B) $\frac{1}{2}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{8x-9}{9}\right)+C$

(C) $\frac{1}{3}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{9x-8}{8}\right)+C$ (D) $\frac{1}{2}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{9x-8}{9}\right)+C$

7.5 Integration by Partial Fractions

Recall that a rational function is defined as the ratio of two polynomials in the form $\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$, where P (x) and Q(x) are polynomials in x and Q$(x) \neq 0$. If the degree of P(x) is less than the degree of Q(x), then the rational function is called proper, otherwise, it is called improper. The improper rational functions can be reduced to the proper rational functions by long division process. Thus, if $\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$ is improper, then $\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} = T(x) + \frac{P_1(x)}{Q(x)}$, where T($x$) is a polynomial in x and $\frac{P_1(x)}{Q(x)}$ is a proper rational function. As we know how to integrate polynomials, the integration of any rational function is reduced to the integration of a proper rational function. The rational functions which we shall consider here for integration purposes will be those whose denominators can be factorised into linear and quadratic factors. Assume that we want to evaluate $\int \frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} dx$, where $\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$ is proper rational function. It is always possible to write the integrand as a sum of simpler rational functions by a method called partial fraction decomposition. After this, the integration can be carried out easily using the already known methods. The following Table 7.2 indicates the types of simpler partial fractions that are to be associated with various kind of rational functions.

Table 7.2

S.No.	Form of the rational function	Form of the partial fraction
1.	$\frac{px+q}{(x-a)(x-b)}, a \neq b$	$\frac{A}{x-a}+\frac{B}{x-b}$
2.	$\frac{px+q}{(x-a)^2}$	$\frac{A}{x-a}+\frac{B}{(x-a)^2}$
3.	$\frac{px^2+qx+r}{(x-a)(x-b)(x-c)}$	$\frac{A}{x-a}+\frac{B}{x-b}+\frac{C}{x-c}$
4.	$\frac{px^2+qx+r}{(x-a)^2(x-b)}$	$\frac{A}{x-a}+\frac{B}{(x-a)^2}+\frac{C}{x-b}$
5.	$\frac{px^2+qx+r}{(x-a)(x^2+bx+c)}$	$\frac{A}{x-a}+\frac{Bx+C}{x^2+bx+c}$,
	where $x^2 + bx + c$ cannot be factorised further	

In the above table, A, B and C are real numbers to be determined suitably.

Example 11 Find $\int \frac{dx}{(x+1)(x+2)}$

Solution The integrand is a proper rational function. Therefore, by using the form of partial fraction [Table 7.2 (i)], we write

$$\frac{1}{(x+1)(x+2)} = \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{B}{x+2} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

where, real numbers A and B are to be determined suitably. This gives

$$1 = A(x+2) + B(x+1).$$

Equating the coefficients of x and the constant term, we get

$$A + B = 0$$

and $$2A + B = 1$$

Solving these equations, we get A =1 and B = – 1.

Thus, the integrand is given by

$$\frac{1}{(x+1)(x+2)} = \frac{1}{x+1} + \frac{-1}{x+2}$$

Therefore, $$\int \frac{dx}{(x+1)(x+2)} = \int \frac{dx}{x+1} - \int \frac{dx}{x+2}$$

$$= \log|x+1| - \log|x+2| + C$$

$$= \log\left|\frac{x+1}{x+2}\right| + C$$

Remark The equation (1) above is an identity, i.e. a statement true for all (permissible) values of x. Some authors use the symbol '≡' to indicate that the statement is an identity and use the symbol '=' to indicate that the statement is an equation, i.e., to indicate that the statement is true only for certain values of x.

Example 12 Find $\int \frac{x^2+1}{x^2-5x+6}\,dx$

Solution Here the integrand $\frac{x^2+1}{x^2-5x+6}$ is not proper rational function, so we divide $x^2 + 1$ by $x^2 - 5x + 6$ and find that

$$\frac{x^2+1}{x^2-5x+6} = 1+\frac{5x-5}{x^2-5x+6} = 1+\frac{5x-5}{(x-2)(x-3)}$$

Let $$\frac{5x-5}{(x-2)(x-3)} = \frac{A}{x-2}+\frac{B}{x-3}$$

So that $$5x-5 = A\,(x-3)+B\,(x-2)$$

Equating the coefficients of x and constant terms on both sides, we get $A + B = 5$ and $3A + 2B = 5$. Solving these equations, we get $A = -5$ and $B = 10$

Thus, $$\frac{x^2+1}{x^2-5x+6} = 1-\frac{5}{x-2}+\frac{10}{x-3}$$

Therefore, $$\int\frac{x^2+1}{x^2-5x+6}\,dx = \int dx-5\int\frac{1}{x-2}\,dx+10\int\frac{dx}{x-3}$$
$$= x-5\log|x-2|+10\log|x-3|+C.$$

Example 13 Find $\int\frac{3x-2}{(x+1)^2(x+3)}dx$

Solution The integrand is of the type as given in Table 7.2 (4). We write

$$\frac{3x-2}{(x+1)^2(x+3)} = \frac{A}{x+1}+\frac{B}{(x+1)^2}+\frac{C}{x+3}$$

So that $$3x-2 = A\,(x+1)\,(x+3)+B\,(x+3)+C\,(x+1)^2$$
$$= A\,(x^2+4x+3)+B\,(x+3)+C\,(x^2+2x+1)$$

Comparing coefficient of x^2, x and constant term on both sides, we get $A + C = 0$, $4A + B + 2C = 3$ and $3A + 3B + C = -2$. Solving these equations, we get $A=\frac{11}{4}, B=\frac{-5}{2}$ and $C=\frac{-11}{4}$. Thus the integrand is given by

$$\frac{3x-2}{(x+1)^2(x+3)} = \frac{11}{4(x+1)}-\frac{5}{2(x+1)^2}-\frac{11}{4(x+3)}$$

Therefore, $$\int\frac{3x-2}{(x+1)^2(x+3)} = \frac{11}{4}\int\frac{dx}{x+1}-\frac{5}{2}\int\frac{dx}{(x+1)^2}-\frac{11}{4}\int\frac{dx}{x+3}$$

$$= \frac{11}{4}\log|x+1|+\frac{5}{2(x+1)}-\frac{11}{4}\log|x+3|+C$$

$$= \frac{11}{4}\log\left|\frac{x+1}{x+3}\right|+\frac{5}{2(x+1)}+C$$

Example 14 Find $\int \frac{x^2}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)} dx$

Solution Consider $\frac{x^2}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)}$ and put $x^2 = y$.

Then $$\frac{x^2}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)} = \frac{y}{(y+1)(y+4)}$$

Write $$\frac{y}{(y+1)(y+4)} = \frac{A}{y+1} + \frac{B}{y+4}$$

So that $$y = A(y+4) + B(y+1)$$

Comparing coefficients of y and constant terms on both sides, we get $A + B = 1$ and $4A + B = 0$, which give

$$A = -\frac{1}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \frac{4}{3}$$

Thus, $$\frac{x^2}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)} = -\frac{1}{3(x^2+1)} + \frac{4}{3(x^2+4)}$$

Therefore, $$\int \frac{x^2 dx}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)} = -\frac{1}{3}\int \frac{dx}{x^2+1} + \frac{4}{3}\int \frac{dx}{x^2+4}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{3}\tan^{-1} x + \frac{4}{3} \times \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{2} + C$$

$$= -\frac{1}{3}\tan^{-1} x + \frac{2}{3}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{2} + C$$

In the above example, the substitution was made only for the partial fraction part and not for the integration part. Now, we consider an example, where the integration involves a combination of the substitution method and the partial fraction method.

Example 15 Find $\int \frac{(3\sin\phi - 2)\cos\phi}{5 - \cos^2\phi - 4\sin\phi} d\phi$

Solution Let $y = \sin\phi$

Then $$dy = \cos\phi \, d\phi$$

Therefore, $\displaystyle\int \frac{(3\sin\phi - 2)\cos\phi}{5-\cos^2\phi - 4\sin\phi}\,d\phi = \int \frac{(3y-2)\,dy}{5-(1-y^2)-4y}$

$$= \int \frac{3y-2}{y^2-4y+4}\,dy$$

$$= \int \frac{3y-2}{(y-2)^2} = \text{I (say)}$$

Now, we write $\displaystyle\frac{3y-2}{(y-2)^2} = \frac{\text{A}}{y-2} + \frac{\text{B}}{(y-2)^2}$ [by Table 7.2 (2)]

Therefore, $3y - 2 = \text{A}\,(y-2) + \text{B}$

Comparing the coefficients of y and constant term, we get A = 3 and B – 2A = – 2, which gives A = 3 and B = 4.

Therefore, the required integral is given by

$$\text{I} = \int [\frac{3}{y-2} + \frac{4}{(y-2)^2}]\,dy = 3\int \frac{dy}{y-2} + 4\int \frac{dy}{(y-2)^2}$$

$$= 3\log|y-2| + 4\left(-\frac{1}{y-2}\right) + \text{C}$$

$$= 3\log|\sin\phi - 2| + \frac{4}{2-\sin\phi} + \text{C}$$

$$= 3\log(2-\sin\phi) + \frac{4}{2-\sin\phi} + \text{C} \text{ (since, } 2-\sin\phi \text{ is always positive)}$$

Example 16 Find $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2+x+1\,dx}{(x+2)\,(x^2+1)}$

Solution The integrand is a proper rational function. Decompose the rational function into partial fraction [Table 2.2(5)]. Write

$$\frac{x^2+x+1}{(x^2+1)\,(x+2)} = \frac{\text{A}}{x+2} + \frac{\text{B}x+\text{C}}{(x^2+1)}$$

Therefore, $x^2 + x + 1 = \text{A}\,(x^2+1) + (\text{B}x+\text{C})\,(x+2)$

Equating the coefficients of x^2, x and of constant term of both sides, we get A + B =1, 2B + C = 1 and A + 2C = 1. Solving these equations, we get $A=\frac{3}{5}, B=\frac{2}{5}$ and $C=\frac{1}{5}$

Thus, the integrand is given by

$$\frac{x^2+x+1}{(x^2+1)(x+2)} = \frac{3}{5(x+2)} + \frac{\frac{2}{5}x+\frac{1}{5}}{x^2+1} = \frac{3}{5(x+2)} + \frac{1}{5}\left(\frac{2x+1}{x^2+1}\right)$$

Therefore, $$\int \frac{x^2+x+1}{(x^2+1)(x+2)}dx = \frac{3}{5}\int\frac{dx}{x+2} + \frac{1}{5}\int\frac{2x}{x^2+1}dx + \frac{1}{5}\int\frac{1}{x^2+1}dx$$

$$= \frac{3}{5}\log|x+2| + \frac{1}{5}\log|x^2+1| + \frac{1}{5}\tan^{-1}x + C$$

EXERCISE 7.5

Integrate the rational functions in Exercises 1 to 21.

1. $\frac{x}{(x+1)(x+2)}$ **2.** $\frac{1}{x^2-9}$ **3.** $\frac{3x-1}{(x-1)(x-2)(x-3)}$

4. $\frac{x}{(x-1)(x-2)(x-3)}$ **5.** $\frac{2x}{x^2+3x+2}$ **6.** $\frac{1-x^2}{x(1-2x)}$

7. $\frac{x}{(x^2+1)(x-1)}$ **8.** $\frac{x}{(x-1)^2(x+2)}$ **9.** $\frac{3x+5}{x^3-x^2-x+1}$

10. $\frac{2x-3}{(x^2-1)(2x+3)}$ **11.** $\frac{5x}{(x+1)(x^2-4)}$ **12.** $\frac{x^3+x+1}{x^2-1}$

13. $\frac{2}{(1-x)(1+x^2)}$ **14.** $\frac{3x-1}{(x+2)^2}$ **15.** $\frac{1}{x^4-1}$

16. $\frac{1}{x(x^n+1)}$ [Hint: multiply numerator and denominator by x^{n-1} and put $x^n = t$]

17. $\frac{\cos x}{(1-\sin x)(2-\sin x)}$ [Hint : Put $\sin x = t$]

18. $\dfrac{(x^2+1)(x^2+2)}{(x^2+3)(x^2+4)}$ **19.** $\dfrac{2x}{(x^2+1)(x^2+3)}$ **20.** $\dfrac{1}{x(x^4-1)}$

21. $\dfrac{1}{(e^x-1)}$ [Hint : Put $e^x = t$]

Choose the correct answer in each of the Exercises 22 and 23.

22. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x\,dx}{(x-1)(x-2)}$ equals

(A) $\log\left|\dfrac{(x-1)^2}{x-2}\right| + C$ (B) $\log\left|\dfrac{(x-2)^2}{x-1}\right| + C$

(C) $\log\left|\left(\dfrac{x-1}{x-2}\right)^2\right| + C$ (D) $\log|(x-1)(x-2)| + C$

23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{dx}{x(x^2+1)}$ equals

(A) $\log|x| - \dfrac{1}{2}\log(x^2+1) + C$ (B) $\log|x| + \dfrac{1}{2}\log(x^2+1) + C$

(C) $-\log|x| + \dfrac{1}{2}\log(x^2+1) + C$ (D) $\dfrac{1}{2}\log|x| + \log(x^2+1) + C$

7.6 Integration by Parts

In this section, we describe one more method of integration, that is found quite useful in integrating products of functions.

If u and v are any two differentiable functions of a single variable x (say). Then, by the product rule of differentiation, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}(uv) = u\frac{dv}{dx} + v\frac{du}{dx}$$

Integrating both sides, we get

$$uv = \int u\frac{dv}{dx}\,dx + \int v\frac{du}{dx}\,dx$$

or $$\int u\frac{dv}{dx}\,dx = uv - \int v\frac{du}{dx}\,dx \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Let $$u = f(x) \text{ and } \frac{dv}{dx} = g(x). \text{ Then}$$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = f'(x) \text{ and } v = \int g(x)\,dx$$

Therefore, expression (1) can be rewritten as

$$\int f(x)\, g(x)\, dx = f(x)\int g(x)\, dx - \int [\int g(x)\, dx]\, f'(x)\, dx$$

i.e.,

$$\int f(x)\, g(x)\, dx = f(x)\int g(x)\, dx - \int [f'(x) \int g(x)\, dx]\, dx$$

If we take f as the first function and g as the second function, then this formula may be stated as follows:

"The integral of the product of two functions = (first function) × (integral of the second function) – Integral of [(differential coefficient of the first function) × (integral of the second function)]"

Example 17 Find $\int x \cos x\, dx$

Solution Put $f(x) = x$ (first function) and $g(x) = \cos x$ (second function). Then, integration by parts gives

$$\int x \cos x\, dx = x\int \cos x\, dx - \int [\frac{d}{dx}(x) \int \cos x\, dx]\, dx$$

$$= x \sin x - \int \sin x\, dx = x \sin x + \cos x + C$$

Suppose, we take $f(x) = \cos x$ and $g(x) = x$. Then

$$\int x \cos x\, dx = \cos x \int x\, dx - \int [\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) \int x\, dx]\, dx$$

$$= (\cos x)\frac{x^2}{2} + \int \sin x \frac{x^2}{2}\, dx$$

Thus, it shows that the integral $\int x \cos x\, dx$ is reduced to the comparatively more complicated integral having more power of x. Therefore, the proper choice of the first function and the second function is significant.

Remarks

(i) It is worth mentioning that integration by parts is not applicable to product of functions in all cases. For instance, the method does not work for $\int \sqrt{x} \sin x\, dx$. The reason is that there does not exist any function whose derivative is $\sqrt{x} \sin x$.

(ii) Observe that while finding the integral of the second function, we did not add any constant of integration. If we write the integral of the second function $\cos x$

as $\sin x + k$, where k is any constant, then

$$\int x \cos x \, dx = x(\sin x + k) - \int (\sin x + k) \, dx$$

$$= x(\sin x + k) - \int (\sin x \, dx - \int k \, dx$$

$$= x(\sin x + k) - \cos x - kx + C = x \sin x + \cos x + C$$

This shows that adding a constant to the integral of the second function is superfluous so far as the final result is concerned while applying the method of integration by parts.

(iii) Usually, if any function is a power of x or a polynomial in x, then we take it as the first function. However, in cases where other function is inverse trigonometric function or logarithmic function, then we take them as first function.

Example 18 Find $\int \log x \, dx$

Solution To start with, we are unable to guess a function whose derivative is $\log x$. We take $\log x$ as the first function and the constant function 1 as the second function. Then, the integral of the second function is x.

Hence,
$$\int (\log x.1) \, dx = \log x \int 1 \, dx - \int [\frac{d}{dx} (\log x) \int 1 \, dx] \, dx$$

$$= (\log x) \cdot x - \int \frac{1}{x} x \, dx = x \log x - x + C .$$

Example 19 Find $\int x e^x dx$

Solution Take first function as x and second function as e^x. The integral of the second function is e^x.

Therefore,
$$\int x e^x dx = x e^x - \int 1 \cdot e^x dx = xe^x - e^x + C.$$

Example 20 Find $\int \frac{x \sin^{-1} x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} dx$

Solution Let first function be $\sin^{-1} x$ and second function be $\frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

First we find the integral of the second function, i.e., $\int \frac{x \, dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$.

Put $t = 1 - x^2$. Then $dt = -2x \, dx$

Therefore, $\int \frac{x\,dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = -\frac{1}{2}\int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{t}} = -\sqrt{t} = -\sqrt{1-x^2}$

Hence, $\int \frac{x \sin^{-1} x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\,dx = (\sin^{-1} x)\left(-\sqrt{1-x^2}\right) - \int \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}\left(-\sqrt{1-x^2}\right)dx$

$$= -\sqrt{1-x^2}\,\sin^{-1}x + x + C = x - \sqrt{1-x^2}\,\sin^{-1}x + C$$

Alternatively, this integral can also be worked out by making substitution $\sin^{-1} x = \theta$ and then integrating by parts.

Example 21 Find $\int e^x \sin x\,dx$

Solution Take e^x as the first function and $\sin x$ as second function. Then, integrating by parts, we have

$$I = \int e^x \sin x\,dx = e^x(-\cos x) + \int e^x \cos x\,dx$$

$$= -e^x \cos x + I_1 \text{ (say)} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Taking e^x and $\cos x$ as the first and second functions, respectively, in I_1, we get

$$I_1 = e^x \sin x - \int e^x \sin x\,dx$$

Substituting the value of I_1 in (1), we get

$$I = -e^x \cos x + e^x \sin x - I \text{ or } 2I = e^x(\sin x - \cos x)$$

Hence, $I = \int e^x \sin x\,dx = \frac{e^x}{2}(\sin x - \cos x) + C$

Alternatively, above integral can also be determined by taking $\sin x$ as the first function and e^x the second function.

7.6.1 *Integral of the type* $\int e^x [f(x) + f'(x)]\,dx$

We have $I = \int e^x [f(x) + f'(x)]\,dx = \int e^x f(x)\,dx + \int e^x f'(x)\,dx$

$$= I_1 + \int e^x f'(x)\,dx, \text{ where } I_1 = \int e^x f(x)\,dx \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Taking $f(x)$ and e^x as the first function and second function, respectively, in I_1 and integrating it by parts, we have $I_1 = f(x)\,e^x - \int f'(x)\,e^x dx + C$

Substituting I_1 in (1), we get

$$I = e^x f(x) - \int f'(x)\,e^x dx + \int e^x f'(x)\,dx + C = e^x f(x) + C$$

Thus, $$\int e^x [f(x) + f'(x)]\,dx = e^x f(x) + C$$

Example 22 Find (i) $\int e^x (\tan^{-1}x + \frac{1}{1+x^2})\,dx$ (ii) $\int \frac{(x^2+1)\,e^x}{(x+1)^2}\,dx$

Solution

(i) We have $I = \int e^x (\tan^{-1}x + \frac{1}{1+x^2})\,dx$

Consider $f(x) = \tan^{-1}x$, then $f'(x) = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$

Thus, the given integrand is of the form $e^x [f(x) + f'(x)]$.

Therefore, $I = \int e^x (\tan^{-1}x + \frac{1}{1+x^2})\,dx = e^x \tan^{-1}x + C$

(ii) We have $I = \int \frac{(x^2+1)\,e^x}{(x+1)^2}\,dx = \int e^x [\frac{x^2-1+1+1}{(x+1)^2}]\,dx$

$$= \int e^x [\frac{x^2-1}{(x+1)^2} + \frac{2}{(x+1)^2}]\,dx = \int e^x [\frac{x-1}{x+1} + \frac{2}{(x+1)^2}]\,dx$$

Consider $f(x) = \frac{x-1}{x+1}$, then $f'(x) = \frac{2}{(x+1)^2}$

Thus, the given integrand is of the form $e^x [f(x) + f'(x)]$.

Therefore, $$\int \frac{x^2+1}{(x+1)^2} e^x\,dx = \frac{x-1}{x+1} e^x + C$$

EXERCISE 7.6

Integrate the functions in Exercises 1 to 22.

1. $x \sin x$
2. $x \sin 3x$
3. $x^2 e^x$
4. $x \log x$
5. $x \log 2x$
6. $x^2 \log x$
7. $x \sin^{-1}x$
8. $x \tan^{-1} x$
9. $x \cos^{-1} x$
10. $(\sin^{-1}x)^2$
11. $\frac{x \cos^{-1}x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$
12. $x \sec^2 x$
13. $\tan^{-1}x$
14. $x (\log x)^2$
15. $(x^2 + 1) \log x$

16. $e^x(\sin x + \cos x)$ **17.** $\frac{x e^x}{(1+x)^2}$ **18.** $e^x\left(\frac{1+\sin x}{1+\cos x}\right)$

19. $e^x\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{x^2}\right)$ **20.** $\frac{(x-3)\,e^x}{(x-1)^3}$ **21.** $e^{2x}\sin x$

22. $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{2x}{1+x^2}\right)$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 23 and 24.

23. $\int x^2 e^{x^3}\,dx$ equals

(A) $\frac{1}{3}e^{x^3}+C$ (B) $\frac{1}{3}e^{x^2}+C$

(C) $\frac{1}{2}e^{x^3}+C$ (D) $\frac{1}{2}e^{x^2}+C$

24. $\int e^x \sec x\,(1+\tan x)\,dx$ equals

(A) $e^x \cos x + C$ (B) $e^x \sec x + C$

(C) $e^x \sin x + C$ (D) $e^x \tan x + C$

7.6.2 Integrals of some more types

Here, we discuss some special types of standard integrals based on the technique of integration by parts :

(i) $\int\sqrt{x^2-a^2}\,dx$ (ii) $\int\sqrt{x^2+a^2}\,dx$ (iii) $\int\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx$

(i) Let $I=\int\sqrt{x^2-a^2}\,dx$

Taking constant function 1 as the second function and integrating by parts, we have

$$I = x\sqrt{x^2-a^2}-\int\frac{1}{2}\frac{2x}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}\,x\,dx$$

$$= x\sqrt{x^2-a^2}-\int\frac{x^2}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}\,dx = x\sqrt{x^2-a^2}-\int\frac{x^2-a^2+a^2}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}\,dx$$

$$= x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - \int\sqrt{x^2-a^2}\, dx - a^2\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}$$

$$= x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - 1 - a^2\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}$$

or $$2I = x\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - a^2\int\frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}$$

or $$\mathbf{I = \int\sqrt{x^2-a^2}\, dx = \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{x^2-a^2} - \frac{a^2}{2}\log\left|x+\sqrt{x^2-a^2}\right| + C}$$

Similarly, integrating other two integrals by parts. taking constant function 1 as the second function, we get

(ii) $$\mathbf{\int\sqrt{x^2+a^2}dx = \frac{1}{2}x\sqrt{x^2+a^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\log\left|x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}\right| + C}$$

(iii) $$\mathbf{\int\sqrt{a^2-x^2}dx = \frac{1}{2}x\sqrt{a^2-x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a} + C}$$

Alternatively, integrals (i), (ii) and (iii) can also be found by making trigonometric substitution $x = a\sec\theta$ in (i), $x = a\tan\theta$ in (ii) and $x = a\sin\theta$ in (iii) respectively.

Example 23 Find $\int\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}\, dx$

Solution Note that

$$\int\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}\, dx = \int\sqrt{(x+1)^2+4}\, dx$$

Put $x+1 = y$, so that $dx = dy$. Then

$$\int\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}\, dx = \int\sqrt{y^2+2^2}\, dy$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}y\sqrt{y^2+4} + \frac{4}{2}\log\left|y+\sqrt{y^2+4}\right| + C \qquad \text{[using 7.6.2 (ii)]}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(x+1)\sqrt{x^2+2x+5} + 2\log\left|x+1+\sqrt{x^2+2x+5}\right| + C$$

Example 24 Find $\int\sqrt{3-2x-x^2}\, dx$

Solution Note that $\int\sqrt{3-2x-x^2}\, dx = \int\sqrt{4-(x+1)^2}\, dx$

Put $x + 1 = y$ so that $dx = dy$.

Thus $$\int \sqrt{3-2x-x^2}\, dx = \int \sqrt{4-y^2}\, dy$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} y \sqrt{4-y^2} + \frac{4}{2} \sin^{-1} \frac{y}{2} + C \qquad \text{[using 7.6.2 (iii)]}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} (x+1) \sqrt{3-2x-x^2} + 2 \sin^{-1} \left(\frac{x+1}{2}\right) + C$$

EXERCISE 7.7

Integrate the functions in Exercises 1 to 9.

1. $\sqrt{4-x^2}$
2. $\sqrt{1-4x^2}$
3. $\sqrt{x^2+4x+6}$
4. $\sqrt{x^2+4x+1}$
5. $\sqrt{1-4x-x^2}$
6. $\sqrt{x^2+4x-5}$
7. $\sqrt{1+3x-x^2}$
8. $\sqrt{x^2+3x}$
9. $\sqrt{1+\frac{x^2}{9}}$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 10 to 11.

10. $\int \sqrt{1+x^2}\, dx$ is equal to

    (A) $\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{1+x^2} + \frac{1}{2}\log\left|\left(x+\sqrt{1+x^2}\right)\right| + C$

    (B) $\frac{2}{3}(1+x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C$

    (C) $\frac{2}{3}x(1+x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C$

    (D) $\frac{x^2}{2}\sqrt{1+x^2} + \frac{1}{2}x^2\log\left|x+\sqrt{1+x^2}\right| + C$

11. $\int \sqrt{x^2-8x+7}\, dx$ is equal to

    (A) $\frac{1}{2}(x-4)\sqrt{x^2-8x+7} + 9\log\left|x-4+\sqrt{x^2-8x+7}\right| + C$

    (B) $\frac{1}{2}(x+4)\sqrt{x^2-8x+7} + 9\log\left|x+4+\sqrt{x^2-8x+7}\right| + C$

    (C) $\frac{1}{2}(x-4)\sqrt{x^2-8x+7} - 3\sqrt{2}\log\left|x-4+\sqrt{x^2-8x+7}\right| + C$

    (D) $\frac{1}{2}(x-4)\sqrt{x^2-8x+7} - \frac{9}{2}\log\left|x-4+\sqrt{x^2-8x+7}\right| + C$

7.7 Definite Integral

In the previous sections, we have studied about the indefinite integrals and discussed few methods of finding them including integrals of some special functions. In this section, we shall study what is called definite integral of a function. The definite integral has a unique value. A definite integral is denoted by $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$, where *a* is called the lower limit of the integral and *b* is called the upper limit of the integral. The definite integral is introduced either as the limit of a sum or if it has an anti derivative F in the interval [*a*, *b*], then its value is the difference between the values of F at the end points, i.e., F(*b*) – F(*a*).

7.8 Fundamental Theorem of Calculus

7.8.1 *Area function*

We have defined $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ as the area of the region bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, the ordinates $x = a$ and $x = b$ and *x*-axis. Let *x* be a given point in [*a*, *b*]. Then $\int_a^x f(x)\,dx$ represents the area of the light shaded region in Fig 7.1 [Here it is assumed that $f(x) > 0$ for $x \in [a, b]$, the assertion made below is equally true for other functions as well]. The area of this shaded region depends upon the value of *x*.

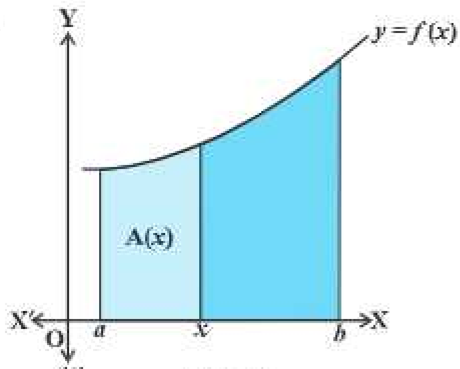


Fig 7.1

In other words, the area of this shaded region is a function of *x*. We denote this function of *x* by A(*x*). We call the function A(*x*) as *Area function* and is given by

$$A(x) = \int_a^x f(x)\,dx \qquad \ldots (1)$$

Based on this definition, the two basic fundamental theorems have been given. However, we only state them as their proofs are beyond the scope of this text book.

7.8.2 *First fundamental theorem of integral calculus*

Theorem 1 Let *f* be a continuous function on the closed interval [*a*, *b*] and let A (*x*) be the area function. Then $\mathbf{A'(x) = f(x)}$, for all $\mathbf{x \in [a, b]}$.

7.8.3 *Second fundamental theorem of integral calculus*

We state below an important theorem which enables us to evaluate definite integrals by making use of anti derivative.

Theorem 2 Let f be continuous function defined on the closed interval $[a, b]$ and F be an anti derivative of f. Then $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = [\mathbf{F}(x)]_a^b = \mathbf{F}(b) - \mathbf{F}(a)$.

Remarks

(i) In words, the Theorem 2 tells us that $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx =$ (value of the anti derivative F of f at the upper limit b – value of the same anti derivative at the lower limit a).

(ii) This theorem is very useful, because it gives us a method of calculating the definite integral more easily, without calculating the limit of a sum.

(iii) The crucial operation in evaluating a definite integral is that of finding a function whose derivative is equal to the integrand. This strengthens the relationship between differentiation and integration.

(iv) In $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$, the function f needs to be well defined and continuous in $[a, b]$.

For instance, the consideration of definite integral $\int_{-2}^{3} x(x^2-1)^{\frac{1}{2}}\,dx$ is erroneous since the function f expressed by $f(x) = x(x^2-1)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ is not defined in a portion $-1 < x < 1$ of the closed interval $[-2, 3]$.

Steps for calculating $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.

(i) Find the indefinite integral $\int f(x)\,dx$. Let this be F(x). There is no need to keep integration constant C because if we consider F(x) + C instead of F(x), we get

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = [\mathrm{F}(x)+\mathrm{C}]_a^b = [\mathrm{F}(b)+\mathrm{C}] - [\mathrm{F}(a)+\mathrm{C}] = \mathrm{F}(b) - \mathrm{F}(a).$$

Thus, the arbitrary constant disappears in evaluating the value of the definite integral.

(ii) Evaluate $\mathrm{F}(b) - \mathrm{F}(a) = [\mathrm{F}(x)]_a^b$, which is the value of $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.

We now consider some examples

Example 25 Evaluate the following integrals:

(i) $\int_2^3 x^2\, dx$ (ii) $\int_4^9 \frac{\sqrt{x}}{(30 - x^{\frac{3}{2}})^2}\, dx$

(iii) $\int_1^2 \frac{x\, dx}{(x+1)(x+2)}$ (iv) $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin^3 2t \cos 2t\, dt$

Solution

(i) Let $I = \int_2^3 x^2\, dx$. Since $\int x^2\, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} = F(x)$,

Therefore, by the second fundamental theorem, we get

$$I = F(3) - F(2) = \frac{27}{3} - \frac{8}{3} = \frac{19}{3}$$

(ii) Let $I = \int_4^9 \frac{\sqrt{x}}{(30 - x^{\frac{3}{2}})^2}\, dx$. We first find the anti derivative of the integrand.

Put $30 - x^{\frac{3}{2}} = t$. Then $-\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{x}\, dx = dt$ or $\sqrt{x}\, dx = -\frac{2}{3} dt$

Thus, $\int \frac{\sqrt{x}}{(30 - x^{\frac{3}{2}})^2}\, dx = -\frac{2}{3}\int \frac{dt}{t^2} = \frac{2}{3}\left[\frac{1}{t}\right] = \frac{2}{3}\left[\frac{1}{(30 - x^{\frac{3}{2}})}\right] = F(x)$

Therefore, by the second fundamental theorem of calculus, we have

$$I = F(9) - F(4) = \frac{2}{3}\left[\frac{1}{(30 - x^{\frac{3}{2}})}\right]_4^9$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\left[\frac{1}{(30-27)} - \frac{1}{30-8}\right] = \frac{2}{3}\left[\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{22}\right] = \frac{19}{99}$$

(iii) Let $I = \int_1^2 \frac{x\, dx}{(x+1)(x+2)}$

Using partial fraction, we get $\frac{x}{(x+1)(x+2)} = \frac{-1}{x+1} + \frac{2}{x+2}$

So $$\int \frac{x\,dx}{(x+1)(x+2)} = -\log|x+1| + 2\log|x+2| = \mathrm{F}(x)$$

Therefore, by the second fundamental theorem of calculus, we have

$$\mathrm{I} = \mathrm{F}(2) - \mathrm{F}(1) = [-\log 3 + 2\log 4] - [-\log 2 + 2\log 3]$$

$$= -3\log 3 + \log 2 + 2\log 4 = \log\left(\frac{32}{27}\right)$$

(iv) Let $\mathrm{I} = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin^3 2t \cos 2t\, dt$. Consider $\int \sin^3 2t \cos 2t\, dt$

Put $\sin 2t = u$ so that $2\cos 2t\, dt = du$ or $\cos 2t\, dt = \frac{1}{2}\, du$

So $$\int \sin^3 2t \cos 2t\, dt = \frac{1}{2}\int u^3 du$$

$$= \frac{1}{8}[u^4] = \frac{1}{8}\sin^4 2t = \mathrm{F}(t) \text{ say}$$

Therefore, by the second fundamental theorem of integral calculus

$$\mathrm{I} = \mathrm{F}\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) - \mathrm{F}(0) = \frac{1}{8}\left[\sin^4\frac{\pi}{2} - \sin^4 0\right] = \frac{1}{8}$$

EXERCISE 7.8

Evaluate the definite integrals in Exercises 1 to 20.

1. $\int_{-1}^{1}(x+1)\,dx$ **2.** $\int_2^3 \frac{1}{x}\,dx$ **3.** $\int_1^2 (4x^3 - 5x^2 + 6x + 9)\,dx$

4. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin 2x\,dx$ **5.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos 2x\,dx$ **6.** $\int_4^5 e^x dx$ **7.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \tan x\,dx$

8. $\int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \operatorname{cosec} x\,dx$ **9.** $\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ **10.** $\int_0^1 \frac{dx}{1+x^2}$ **11.** $\int_2^3 \frac{dx}{x^2-1}$

12. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos^2 x\, dx$ **13.** $\int_2^3 \frac{x\, dx}{x^2+1}$ **14.** $\int_0^1 \frac{2x+3}{5x^2+1}\, dx$ **15.** $\int_0^1 x\, e^{x^2}\, dx$

16. $\int_1^2 \frac{5x^2}{x^2+4x+3}$ **17.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (2\sec^2 x + x^3 + 2)\, dx$ **18.** $\int_0^{\pi} (\sin^2 \frac{x}{2} - \cos^2 \frac{x}{2})\, dx$

19. $\int_0^2 \frac{6x+3}{x^2+4}\, dx$ **20.** $\int_0^1 (x\, e^x + \sin \frac{\pi x}{4})\, dx$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 21 and 22.

21. $\int_1^{\sqrt{3}} \frac{dx}{1+x^2}$ equals

(A) $\frac{\pi}{3}$ (B) $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ (C) $\frac{\pi}{6}$ (D) $\frac{\pi}{12}$

22. $\int_0^{\frac{2}{3}} \frac{dx}{4+9x^2}$ equals

(A) $\frac{\pi}{6}$ (B) $\frac{\pi}{12}$ (C) $\frac{\pi}{24}$ (D) $\frac{\pi}{4}$

7.9 Evaluation of Definite Integrals by Substitution

In the previous sections, we have discussed several methods for finding the indefinite integral. One of the important methods for finding the indefinite integral is the method of substitution.

To evaluate $\int_a^b f(x)\, dx$, by substitution, the steps could be as follows:

1. Consider the integral without limits and substitute, $y = f(x)$ or $x = g(y)$ to reduce the given integral to a known form.
2. Integrate the new integrand with respect to the new variable without mentioning the constant of integration.
3. Resubstitute for the new variable and write the answer in terms of the original variable.
4. Find the values of answers obtained in (3) at the given limits of integral and find the difference of the values at the upper and lower limits.

Note In order to quicken this method, we can proceed as follows: After performing steps 1, and 2, there is no need of step 3. Here, the integral will be kept in the new variable itself, and the limits of the integral will accordingly be changed, so that we can perform the last step.

Let us illustrate this by examples.

Example 26 Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{1} 5x^4\sqrt{x^5+1}\,dx$.

Solution Put $t = x^5 + 1$, then $dt = 5x^4\,dx$.

Therefore, $$\int 5x^4\sqrt{x^5+1}\,dx = \int \sqrt{t}\,dt = \frac{2}{3}t^{\frac{3}{2}} = \frac{2}{3}(x^5+1)^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

Hence, $$\int_{-1}^{1} 5x^4\sqrt{x^5+1}\,dx = \frac{2}{3}\left[(x^5+1)^{\frac{3}{2}}\right]_{-1}^{1}$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\left[(1^5+1)^{\frac{3}{2}} - \left((-1)^5+1\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\right]$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\left[2^{\frac{3}{2}} - 0^{\frac{3}{2}}\right] = \frac{2}{3}(2\sqrt{2}) = \frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3}$$

Alternatively, first we transform the integral and then evaluate the transformed integral with new limits.

Let $t = x^5 + 1$. Then $dt = 5\,x^4\,dx$.

Note that, when $x = -1, t = 0$ and when $x = 1, t = 2$

Thus, as x varies from -1 to 1, t varies from 0 to 2

Therefore $$\int_{-1}^{1} 5x^4\sqrt{x^5+1}\,dx = \int_{0}^{2}\sqrt{t}\,dt$$

$$= \frac{2}{3}\left[t^{\frac{3}{2}}\right]_{0}^{2} = \frac{2}{3}\left[2^{\frac{3}{2}} - 0^{\frac{3}{2}}\right] = \frac{2}{3}(2\sqrt{2}) = \frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3}$$

Example 27 Evaluate $\int_{0}^{1} \frac{\tan^{-1}x}{1+x^2}\,dx$

Solution Let $t = \tan^{-1}x$, then $dt = \frac{1}{1+x^2}\,dx$. The new limits are, when $x = 0$, $t = 0$ and when $x = 1$, $t = \frac{\pi}{4}$. Thus, as x varies from 0 to 1, t varies from 0 to $\frac{\pi}{4}$.

Therefore $$\int_0^1 \frac{\tan^{-1}x}{1+x^2}\,dx = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} t\,dt\left[\frac{t^2}{2}\right]_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{\pi^2}{16}-0\right] = \frac{\pi^2}{32}$$

EXERCISE 7.9

Evaluate the integrals in Exercises 1 to 8 using substitution.

1. $\int_0^1 \frac{x}{x^2+1}\,dx$ **2.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sqrt{\sin\phi}\,\cos^5\phi\,d\phi$ **3.** $\int_0^1 \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{2x}{1+x^2}\right)dx$

4. $\int_0^2 x\sqrt{x+2}$ (Put $x + 2 = t^2$) **5.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin x}{1+\cos^2 x}\,dx$

6. $\int_0^2 \frac{dx}{x+4-x^2}$ **7.** $\int_{-1}^1 \frac{dx}{x^2+2x+5}$ **8.** $\int_1^2\left(\frac{1}{x}-\frac{1}{2x^2}\right)e^{2x}\,dx$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 9 and 10.

9. The value of the integral $\int_{\frac{1}{3}}^1 \frac{(x-x^3)^{\frac{1}{3}}}{x^4}\,dx$ is

(A) 6 (B) 0 (C) 3 (D) 4

10. If $f(x) = \int_0^x t\sin t\,dt$, then $f'(x)$ is

(A) $\cos x + x\sin x$ (B) $x\sin x$

(C) $x\cos x$ (D) $\sin x + x\cos x$

7.10 Some Properties of Definite Integrals

We list below some important properties of definite integrals. These will be useful in evaluating the definite integrals more easily.

P₀ : $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(t)\,dt$

P₁ : $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = -\int_b^a f(x)\,dx$. In particular, $\int_a^a f(x)\,dx = 0$

P₂ : $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \int_a^c f(x)\,dx + \int_c^b f(x)\,dx$

P_3 : $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(a+b-x)\,dx$

P_4 : $\int_0^a f(x)\,dx = \int_0^a f(a-x)\,dx$

(Note that P_4 is a particular case of P_3)

P_5 : $\int_0^{2a} f(x)\,dx = \int_0^a f(x)\,dx + \int_0^a f(2a-x)\,dx$

P_6 : $\int_0^{2a} f(x)\,dx = 2\int_0^a f(x)\,dx$, if $f(2a-x) = f(x)$ and
0 if $f(2a-x) = -f(x)$

P_7 : (i) $\int_{-a}^a f(x)\,dx = 2\int_0^a f(x)\,dx$, if f is an even function, i.e., if $f(-x) = f(x)$.

(ii) $\int_{-a}^a f(x)\,dx = 0$, if f is an odd function, i.e., if $f(-x) = -f(x)$.

We give the proofs of these properties one by one.

Proof of P_0 It follows directly by making the substitution $x = t$.

Proof of P_1 Let F be anti derivative of f. Then, by the second fundamental theorem of calculus, we have $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a) = -[F(a) - F(b)] = -\int_b^a f(x)\,dx$

Here, we observe that, if $a = b$, then $\int_a^a f(x)\,dx = 0$.

Proof of P_2 Let F be anti derivative of f. Then

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a) \quad \dots (1)$$

$$\int_a^c f(x)\,dx = F(c) - F(a) \quad \dots (2)$$

and

$$\int_c^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(c) \quad \dots (3)$$

Adding (2) and (3), we get $\int_a^c f(x)\,dx + \int_c^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a) = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$

This proves the property P_2.

Proof of P_3 Let $t = a + b - x$. Then $dt = -dx$. When $x = a$, $t = b$ and when $x = b$, $t = a$. Therefore

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = -\int_b^a f(a+b-t)\,dt$$

$$= \int_a^b f(a+b-t)\, dt \quad \text{(by } P_1\text{)}$$

$$= \int_a^b f(a+b-x)\, dx \text{ by } P_0$$

Proof of P_4 Put $t = a - x$. Then $dt = -dx$. When $x = 0$, $t = a$ and when $x = a$, $t = 0$. Now proceed as in P_3.

Proof of P_5 Using P_2, we have $\int_0^{2a} f(x)\, dx = \int_0^a f(x)\, dx + \int_a^{2a} f(x)\, dx$.

Let $t = 2a - x$ in the second integral on the right hand side. Then $dt = -dx$. When $x = a$, $t = a$ and when $x = 2a$, $t = 0$. Also $x = 2a - t$.

Therefore, the second integral becomes

$$\int_a^{2a} f(x)\, dx = -\int_a^0 f(2a-t)\, dt = \int_0^a f(2a-t)\, dt = \int_0^a f(2a-x)\, dx$$

Hence $\int_0^{2a} f(x)\, dx = \int_0^a f(x)\, dx + \int_0^a f(2a-x)\, dx$

Proof of P_6 Using P_5, we have $\int_0^{2a} f(x)\, dx = \int_0^a f(x)\, dx + \int_0^a f(2a-x)\, dx$ ... (1)

Now, if $f(2a - x) = f(x)$, then (1) becomes

$$\int_0^{2a} f(x)\, dx = \int_0^a f(x)\, dx + \int_0^a f(x)\, dx = 2\int_0^a f(x)\, dx,$$

and if $f(2a - x) = -f(x)$, then (1) becomes

$$\int_0^{2a} f(x)\, dx = \int_0^a f(x)\, dx - \int_0^a f(x)\, dx = 0$$

Proof of P_7 Using P_2, we have

$$\int_{-a}^a f(x)\, dx = \int_{-a}^0 f(x)\, dx + \int_0^a f(x)\, dx. \text{ Then}$$

Let $t = -x$ in the first integral on the right hand side.
$dt = -dx$. When $x = -a$, $t = a$ and when
$x = 0$, $t = 0$. Also $x = -t$.

Therefore
$$\int_{-a}^a f(x)\, dx = -\int_a^0 f(-t)\, dt + \int_0^a f(x)\, dx$$

$$= \int_0^a f(-x)\, dx + \int_0^a f(x)\, dx \qquad \text{(by } P_0\text{)} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

(i) Now, if f is an even function, then $f(-x) = f(x)$ and so (1) becomes

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = \int_0^a f(x)\,dx + \int_0^a f(x)\,dx = 2\int_0^a f(x)\,dx$$

(ii) If f is an odd function, then $f(-x) = -f(x)$ and so (1) becomes

$$\int_{-a}^{a} f(x)\,dx = -\int_0^a f(x)\,dx + \int_0^a f(x)\,dx = 0$$

Example 28 Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{2} \left| x^3 - x \right| dx$

Solution We note that $x^3 - x \geq 0$ on $[-1, 0]$ and $x^3 - x \leq 0$ on $[0, 1]$ and that $x^3 - x \geq 0$ on $[1, 2]$. So by P_2 we write

$$\int_{-1}^{2} \left| x^3 - x \right| dx = \int_{-1}^{0} (x^3 - x)\,dx + \int_0^1 -(x^3 - x)\,dx + \int_1^2 (x^3 - x)\,dx$$

$$= \int_{-1}^{0} (x^3 - x)\,dx + \int_0^1 (x - x^3)\,dx + \int_1^2 (x^3 - x)\,dx$$

$$= \left[\frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{x^2}{2}\right]_{-1}^{0} + \left[\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^4}{4}\right]_0^1 + \left[\frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{x^2}{2}\right]_1^2$$

$$= -\left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}\right) + \left(\frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4}\right) + (4 - 2) - \left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{2}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{4} + 2 - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{2} - \frac{3}{4} + 2 = \frac{11}{4}$$

Example 29 Evaluate $\int_{\frac{-\pi}{4}}^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin^2 x\,dx$

Solution We observe that $\sin^2 x$ is an even function. Therefore, by P_7 (i), we get

$$\int_{\frac{-\pi}{4}}^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin^2 x\,dx = 2\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin^2 x\,dx$$

$$= 2\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \frac{(1 - \cos 2x)}{2}\,dx = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} (1 - \cos 2x)\,dx$$

$$= \left[x - \frac{1}{2}\sin 2x\right]_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} = \left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{1}{2}\sin\frac{\pi}{2}\right) - 0 = \frac{\pi}{4} - \frac{1}{2}$$

Example 30 Evaluate $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \sin x}{1+\cos^2 x} dx$

Solution Let I = $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \sin x}{1+\cos^2 x} dx$. Then, by P_4, we have

$$I = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{(\pi - x)\sin(\pi - x)\, dx}{1+\cos^2(\pi - x)}$$

$$= \int_0^{\pi} \frac{(\pi - x)\sin x\, dx}{1+\cos^2 x} = \pi\int_0^{\pi} \frac{\sin x\, dx}{1+\cos^2 x} - I$$

or $$2I = \pi\int_0^{\pi} \frac{\sin x\, dx}{1+\cos^2 x}$$

or $$I = \frac{\pi}{2}\int_0^{\pi} \frac{\sin x\, dx}{1+\cos^2 x}$$

Put $\cos x = t$ so that $-\sin x\, dx = dt$. When $x = 0$, $t = 1$ and when $x = \pi$, $t = -1$. Therefore, (by P_1) we get

$$I = \frac{-\pi}{2}\int_1^{-1} \frac{dt}{1+t^2} = \frac{\pi}{2}\int_{-1}^{1} \frac{dt}{1+t^2}$$

$$= \pi\int_0^1 \frac{dt}{1+t^2} \text{ (by } P_7\text{, since } \frac{1}{1+t^2} \text{ is even function)}$$

$$= \pi\left[\tan^{-1} t\right]_0^1 = \pi\left[\tan^{-1} 1 - \tan^{-1} 0\right] = \pi\left[\frac{\pi}{4} - 0\right] = \frac{\pi^2}{4}$$

Example 31 Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{1} \sin^5 x \cos^4 x\, dx$

Solution Let I = $\int_{-1}^{1} \sin^5 x \cos^4 x\, dx$. Let $f(x) = \sin^5 x \cos^4 x$. Then

$f(-x) = \sin^5(-x)\cos^4(-x) = -\sin^5 x \cos^4 x = -f(x)$, i.e., f is an odd function. Therefore, by P_7 (ii), I = 0

Example 32 Evaluate $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin^4 x}{\sin^4 x + \cos^4 x} dx$

Solution Let $I = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin^4 x}{\sin^4 x + \cos^4 x} dx$ ... (1)

Then, by P_4

$$I = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin^4 (\frac{\pi}{2} - x)}{\sin^4 (\frac{\pi}{2} - x) + \cos^4 (\frac{\pi}{2} - x)} dx = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\cos^4 x}{\cos^4 x + \sin^4 x} dx \quad ... (2)$$

Adding (1) and (2), we get

$$2I = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin^4 x + \cos^4 x}{\sin^4 x + \cos^4 x} dx = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} dx = [x]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

Hence $I = \frac{\pi}{4}$

Example 33 Evaluate $\int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \frac{dx}{1 + \sqrt{\tan x}}$

Solution Let $I = \int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \frac{dx}{1 + \sqrt{\tan x}} = \int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \frac{\sqrt{\cos x}\, dx}{\sqrt{\cos x} + \sqrt{\sin x}}$ ... (1)

Then, by P_3

$$I = \int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \frac{\sqrt{\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{6} - x\right)} dx}{\sqrt{\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{6} - x\right)} + \sqrt{\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{6} - x\right)}}$$

$$= \int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \frac{\sqrt{\sin x}}{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}} dx \quad ... (2)$$

Adding (1) and (2), we get

$$2I = \int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} dx = [x]_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} = \frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{\pi}{6}. \text{ Hence } I = \frac{\pi}{12}$$

Example 34 Evaluate $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \sin x \, dx$

Solution Let $I = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \sin x \, dx$

Then, by P_4

$$I = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) dx = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \cos x \, dx$$

Adding the two values of I, we get

$$2I = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (\log \sin x + \log \cos x) \, dx$$

$$= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (\log \sin x \cos x + \log 2 - \log 2) \, dx \text{ (by adding and subtracting log 2)}$$

$$= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \sin 2x \, dx - \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log 2 \, dx \quad \text{(Why?)}$$

Put $2x = t$ in the first integral. Then $2\,dx = dt$, when $x = 0$, $t = 0$ and when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$, $t = \pi$.

Therefore $$2I = \frac{1}{2}\int_0^{\pi} \log \sin t \, dt - \frac{\pi}{2} \log 2$$

$$= \frac{2}{2}\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \sin t \, dt - \frac{\pi}{2} \log 2 \text{ [by } P_6 \text{ as } \sin(\pi - t) = \sin t)$$

$$= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \sin x \, dx - \frac{\pi}{2} \log 2 \text{ (by changing variable } t \text{ to } x)$$

$$= I - \frac{\pi}{2} \log 2$$

Hence $$\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \sin x \, dx = \frac{-\pi}{2} \log 2.$$

EXERCISE 7.10

By using the properties of definite integrals, evaluate the integrals in Exercises 1 to 19.

1. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos^2 x \, dx$

2. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sqrt{\sin x}}{\sqrt{\sin x} + \sqrt{\cos x}} dx$

3. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin^{\frac{3}{2}} x \, dx}{\sin^{\frac{3}{2}} x + \cos^{\frac{3}{2}} x}$

4. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\cos^5 x \, dx}{\sin^5 x + \cos^5 x}$

5. $\int_{-5}^{5} | x + 2 | \, dx$

6. $\int_2^8 | x - 5 | \, dx$

7. $\int_0^1 x (1 - x)^n \, dx$

8. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \log (1 + \tan x) \, dx$

9. $\int_0^2 x \sqrt{2 - x} \, dx$

10. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (2 \log \sin x - \log \sin 2x) \, dx$

11. $\int_{\frac{-\pi}{2}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^2 x \, dx$

12. $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \, dx}{1 + \sin x}$

13. $\int_{\frac{-\pi}{2}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^7 x \, dx$

14. $\int_0^{2\pi} \cos^5 x \, dx$

15. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin x - \cos x}{1 + \sin x \cos x} dx$

16. $\int_0^{\pi} \log (1 + \cos x) \, dx$

17. $\int_0^a \frac{\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x} + \sqrt{a - x}} dx$

18. $\int_0^4 |x - 1| \, dx$

19. Show that $\int_0^a f(x) g(x) \, dx = 2 \int_0^a f(x) \, dx$, if f and g are defined as $f(x) = f(a - x)$ and $g(x) + g(a - x) = 4$

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 20 and 21.

20. The value of $\int_{\frac{-\pi}{2}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (x^3 + x \cos x + \tan^5 x + 1) \, dx$ is

(A) 0 (B) 2 (C) π (D) 1

21. The value of $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \log \left(\frac{4 + 3 \sin x}{4 + 3 \cos x} \right) dx$ is

(A) 2 (B) $\frac{3}{4}$ (C) 0 (D) -2

Miscellaneous Examples

Example 35 Find $\int \cos 6x \sqrt{1+\sin 6x}\, dx$

Solution Put $t = 1 + \sin 6x$, so that $dt = 6 \cos 6x\, dx$

Therefore $$\int \cos 6x \sqrt{1+\sin 6x}\, dx = \frac{1}{6}\int t^{\frac{1}{2}} dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{6}\times\frac{2}{3}(t)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C = \frac{1}{9}(1+\sin 6x)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C$$

Example 36 Find $\int \frac{(x^4 - x)^{\frac{1}{4}}}{x^5}\, dx$

Solution We have $\int \frac{(x^4 - x)^{\frac{1}{4}}}{x^5}\, dx = \int \frac{(1-\frac{1}{x^3})^{\frac{1}{4}}}{x^4}\, dx$

Put $1-\frac{1}{x^3} = 1 - x^{-3} = t$, so that $\frac{3}{x^4}dx = dt$

Therefore $\int \frac{(x^4 - x)^{\frac{1}{4}}}{x^5}\, dx = \frac{1}{3}\int t^{\frac{1}{4}}\, dt = \frac{1}{3}\times\frac{4}{5}t^{\frac{5}{4}} + C = \frac{4}{15}\left(1-\frac{1}{x^3}\right)^{\frac{5}{4}} + C$

Example 37 Find $\int \frac{x^4\, dx}{(x-1)(x^2+1)}$

Solution We have

$$\frac{x^4}{(x-1)(x^2+1)} = (x+1) + \frac{1}{x^3 - x^2 + x - 1}$$

$$= (x+1) + \frac{1}{(x-1)(x^2+1)} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Now express $$\frac{1}{(x-1)(x^2+1)} = \frac{A}{(x-1)} + \frac{Bx+C}{(x^2+1)} \quad \text{... (2)}$$

So $$1 = A(x^2 + 1) + (Bx + C)(x - 1)$$
$$= (A + B)x^2 + (C - B)x + A - C$$

Equating coefficients on both sides, we get A + B = 0, C – B = 0 and A – C = 1, which give $A = \frac{1}{2}, B = C = -\frac{1}{2}$. Substituting values of A, B and C in (2), we get

$$\frac{1}{(x-1)(x^2+1)} = \frac{1}{2(x-1)} - \frac{1}{2}\frac{x}{(x^2+1)} - \frac{1}{2(x^2+1)} \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Again, substituting (3) in (1), we have

$$\frac{x^4}{(x-1)(x^2+x+1)} = (x+1) + \frac{1}{2(x-1)} - \frac{1}{2}\frac{x}{(x^2+1)} - \frac{1}{2(x^2+1)}$$

Therefore

$$\int \frac{x^4}{(x-1)(x^2+x+1)}dx = \frac{x^2}{2} + x + \frac{1}{2}\log|x-1| - \frac{1}{4}\log(x^2+1) - \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x + C$$

Example 38 Find $\int \left[\log(\log x) + \frac{1}{(\log x)^2}\right] dx$

Solution Let $I = \int \left[\log(\log x) + \frac{1}{(\log x)^2}\right] dx$

$$= \int \log(\log x)\, dx + \int \frac{1}{(\log x)^2}\, dx$$

In the first integral, let us take 1 as the second function. Then integrating it by parts, we get

$$I = x\log(\log x) - \int \frac{1}{x\log x} x\, dx + \int \frac{dx}{(\log x)^2}$$

$$= x\log(\log x) - \int \frac{dx}{\log x} + \int \frac{dx}{(\log x)^2} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Again, consider $\int \frac{dx}{\log x}$, take 1 as the second function and integrate it by parts, we have $\int \frac{dx}{\log x} = \left[\frac{x}{\log x} - \int x\left\{-\frac{1}{(\log x)^2}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right)\right\} dx\right]$ ... (2)

Putting (2) in (1), we get

$$I = x \log(\log x) - \frac{x}{\log x} - \int \frac{dx}{(\log x)^2} + \int \frac{dx}{(\log x)^2} = x \log(\log x) - \frac{x}{\log x} + C$$

Example 39 Find $\int \left[\sqrt{\cot x} + \sqrt{\tan x}\right] dx$

Solution We have

$$I = \int \left[\sqrt{\cot x} + \sqrt{\tan x}\right] dx = \int \sqrt{\tan x}(1 + \cot x)\, dx$$

Put $\tan x = t^2$, so that $\sec^2 x\, dx = 2t\, dt$

or $$dx = \frac{2t\, dt}{1+t^4}$$

Then $$I = \int t\left(1 + \frac{1}{t^2}\right)\frac{2t}{(1+t^4)}\, dt$$

$$= 2\int \frac{(t^2+1)}{t^4+1}\, dt = 2\int \frac{\left(1+\frac{1}{t^2}\right)dt}{\left(t^2+\frac{1}{t^2}\right)} = 2\int \frac{\left(1+\frac{1}{t^2}\right)dt}{\left(t-\frac{1}{t}\right)^2+2}$$

Put $t - \frac{1}{t} = y$, so that $\left(1+\frac{1}{t^2}\right) dt = dy$. Then

$$I = 2\int \frac{dy}{y^2 + \left(\sqrt{2}\right)^2} = \sqrt{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{\sqrt{2}} + C = \sqrt{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{\left(t-\frac{1}{t}\right)}{\sqrt{2}} + C$$

$$= \sqrt{2}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{t^2-1}{\sqrt{2}\,t}\right) + C = \sqrt{2}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\tan x - 1}{\sqrt{2\tan x}}\right) + C$$

Example 40 Find $\int \frac{\sin 2x \cos 2x\, dx}{\sqrt{9 - \cos^4(2x)}}$

Solution Let $I = \int \frac{\sin 2x \cos 2x}{\sqrt{9-\cos^4 2x}}\, dx$

Put $\cos^2(2x) = t$ so that $4 \sin 2x \cos 2x \, dx = -\, dt$

Therefore $$I = -\frac{1}{4}\int \frac{dt}{\sqrt{9-t^2}} = -\frac{1}{4}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{t}{3}\right) + C = -\frac{1}{4}\sin^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{3}\cos^2 2x\right] + C$$

Example 41 Evaluate $\int_{-1}^{\frac{3}{2}} |x \sin(\pi x)| \, dx$

Solution Here $f(x) = |x \sin \pi x| = \begin{cases} x \sin \pi x \text{ for } -1 \le x \le 1 \\ -x \sin \pi x \text{ for } 1 \le x \le \frac{3}{2} \end{cases}$

Therefore $$\int_{-1}^{\frac{3}{2}} |x \sin \pi x| \, dx = \int_{-1}^{1} x \sin \pi x \, dx + \int_{1}^{\frac{3}{2}} - x \sin \pi x \, dx$$

$$= \int_{-1}^{1} x \sin \pi x \, dx - \int_{1}^{\frac{3}{2}} x \sin \pi x \, dx$$

Integrating both integrals on righthand side, we get

$$\int_{-1}^{\frac{3}{2}} |x \sin \pi x| \, dx = \left[\frac{-x \cos \pi x}{\pi} + \frac{\sin \pi x}{\pi^2}\right]_{-1}^{1} - \left[\frac{-x \cos \pi x}{\pi} + \frac{\sin \pi x}{\pi^2}\right]_{1}^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

$$= \frac{2}{\pi} - \left[-\frac{1}{\pi^2} - \frac{1}{\pi}\right] = \frac{3}{\pi} + \frac{1}{\pi^2}$$

Example 42 Evaluate $\int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \, dx}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x}$

Solution Let $I = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \, dx}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x} = \int_0^{\pi} \frac{(\pi - x) \, dx}{a^2 \cos^2(\pi - x) + b^2 \sin^2(\pi - x)}$ (using P_4)

$$= \pi \int_0^{\pi} \frac{dx}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x} - \int_0^{\pi} \frac{x \, dx}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x}$$

$$= \pi \int_0^{\pi} \frac{dx}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x} - I$$

Thus $$2I = \pi \int_0^{\pi} \frac{dx}{a^2 \cos^2 x + b^2 \sin^2 x}$$

or $$I = \frac{\pi}{2}\int_0^{\pi}\frac{dx}{a^2\cos^2 x + b^2\sin^2 x} = \frac{\pi}{2}\cdot 2\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\frac{dx}{a^2\cos^2 x + b^2\sin^2 x} \text{ (using } P_6)$$

$$= \pi\left[\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}}\frac{dx}{a^2\cos^2 x + b^2\sin^2 x} + \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\frac{dx}{a^2\cos^2 x + b^2\sin^2 x}\right]$$

$$= \pi\left[\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}}\frac{\sec^2 x\,dx}{a^2 + b^2\tan^2 x} + \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}}\frac{\text{cosec}^2 x\,dx}{a^2\cot^2 x + b^2}\right]$$

$$= \pi\left[\int_0^1\frac{dt}{a^2 + b^2t^2} - \int_1^0\frac{du}{a^2u^2 + b^2}\right]\left(\textit{put } \tan x = t \textit{ and } \cot x = u\right)$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{ab}\left[\tan^{-1}\frac{bt}{a}\right]_0^1 - \frac{\pi}{ab}\left[\tan^{-1}\frac{au}{b}\right]_1^0 = \frac{\pi}{ab}\left[\tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a} + \tan^{-1}\frac{a}{b}\right] = \frac{\pi^2}{2ab}$$

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 7

Integrate the functions in Exercises 1 to 23.

1. $\dfrac{1}{x - x^3}$ **2.** $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x+a} + \sqrt{x+b}}$ **3.** $\dfrac{1}{x\sqrt{ax - x^2}}$ [Hint: Put $x = \dfrac{a}{t}$]

4. $\dfrac{1}{x^2(x^4+1)^{\frac{3}{4}}}$ **5.** $\dfrac{1}{x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{1}{3}}}$ [Hint: $\dfrac{1}{x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{1}{3}}} = \dfrac{1}{x^{\frac{1}{3}}\left(1 + x^{\frac{1}{6}}\right)}$, put $x = t^6$]

6. $\dfrac{5x}{(x+1)(x^2+9)}$ **7.** $\dfrac{\sin x}{\sin(x-a)}$ **8.** $\dfrac{e^{5\log x} - e^{4\log x}}{e^{3\log x} - e^{2\log x}}$

9. $\dfrac{\cos x}{\sqrt{4 - \sin^2 x}}$ **10.** $\dfrac{\sin^8 - \cos^8 x}{1 - 2\sin^2 x\cos^2 x}$ **11.** $\dfrac{1}{\cos(x+a)\cos(x+b)}$

12. $\dfrac{x^3}{\sqrt{1 - x^8}}$ **13.** $\dfrac{e^x}{(1+e^x)(2+e^x)}$ **14.** $\dfrac{1}{(x^2+1)(x^2+4)}$

15. $\cos^3 x\, e^{\log \sin x}$ **16.** $e^{3\log x}(x^4+1)^{-1}$ **17.** $f'(ax+b)\,[f(ax+b)]^n$

18. $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{\sin^3 x \sin (x+\alpha)}}$ **19.** $\sqrt{\dfrac{1-\sqrt{x}}{1+\sqrt{x}}}$ **20.** $\dfrac{2+\sin 2x}{1+\cos 2x} e^x$

21. $\dfrac{x^2+x+1}{(x+1)^2 (x+2)}$ **22.** $\tan^{-1}\sqrt{\dfrac{1-x}{1+x}}$

23. $\dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+1}\left[\log (x^2+1) - 2\log x\right]}{x^4}$

Evaluate the definite integrals in Exercises 24 to 31.

24. $\int_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\pi} e^x \left(\dfrac{1-\sin x}{1-\cos x}\right) dx$ **25.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \dfrac{\sin x \cos x}{\cos^4 x + \sin^4 x} dx$ **26.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \dfrac{\cos^2 x \, dx}{\cos^2 x + 4\sin^2 x}$

27. $\int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \dfrac{\sin x + \cos x}{\sqrt{\sin 2x}} dx$ **28.** $\int_0^1 \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x}-\sqrt{x}}$ **29.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \dfrac{\sin x + \cos x}{9+16\sin 2x} dx$

30. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin 2x \tan^{-1}(\sin x)\, dx$

31. $\int_1^4 [|x-1|+|x-2|+|x-3|]\, dx$

Prove the following (Exercises 32 to 37)

32. $\int_1^3 \dfrac{dx}{x^2(x+1)} = \dfrac{2}{3} + \log\dfrac{2}{3}$ **33.** $\int_0^1 x e^x dx = 1$

34. $\int_{-1}^1 x^{17} \cos^4 x \, dx = 0$ **35.** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin^3 x \, dx = \dfrac{2}{3}$

36. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} 2\tan^3 x \, dx = 1 - \log 2$ **37.** $\int_0^1 \sin^{-1} x \, dx = \dfrac{\pi}{2} - 1$

Choose the correct answers in Exercises 38 to 40

38. $\int \dfrac{dx}{e^x + e^{-x}}$ is equal to

(A) $\tan^{-1}(e^x) + C$ (B) $\tan^{-1}(e^{-x}) + C$

(C) $\log(e^x - e^{-x}) + C$ (D) $\log(e^x + e^{-x}) + C$

39. $\int \dfrac{\cos 2x}{(\sin x + \cos x)^2} dx$ is equal to

(A) $\dfrac{-1}{\sin x + \cos x} + C$ (B) $\log|\sin x + \cos x| + C$

(C) $\log|\sin x - \cos x| + C$ (D) $\dfrac{1}{(\sin x + \cos x)^2}$

40. If $f(a + b - x) = f(x)$, then $\int_a^b x\, f(x)\, dx$ is equal to

(A) $\dfrac{a+b}{2}\int_a^b f(b-x)\, dx$ (B) $\dfrac{a+b}{2}\int_a^b f(b+x)\, dx$

(C) $\dfrac{b-a}{2}\int_a^b f(x)\, dx$ (D) $\dfrac{a+b}{2}\int_a^b f(x)\, dx$

Summary

- Integration is the inverse process of differentiation. In the differential calculus, we are given a function and we have to find the derivative or differential of this function, but in the integral calculus, we are to find a function whose differential is given. Thus, integration is a process which is the inverse of differentiation.

  Let $\dfrac{d}{dx}F(x) = f(x)$. Then we write $\int f(x)\, dx = F(x) + C$. These integrals are called indefinite integrals or general integrals, C is called constant of integration. All these integrals differ by a constant.
- Some properties of indefinite integrals are as follows:

  1. $\int [f(x) + g(x)]\, dx = \int f(x)\, dx + \int g(x)\, dx$

  2. For any real number k, $\int k\, f(x)\, dx = k\int f(x)\, dx$

  More generally, if $f_1, f_2, f_3, \ldots, f_n$ are functions and $k_1, k_2, \ldots, k_n$ are real numbers. Then

  $$\int [k_1 f_1(x) + k_2 f_2(x) + \ldots + k_n f_n(x)]\, dx$$

  $$= k_1 \int f_1(x)\, dx + k_2 \int f_2(x)\, dx + \ldots + k_n \int f_n(x)\, dx$$
- **Some standard integrals**

  (i) $\int x^n dx = \dfrac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C$, $n \neq -1$. Particularly, $\int dx = x + C$

(ii) $\int \cos x \, dx = \sin x + C$ (iii) $\int \sin x \, dx = -\cos x + C$

(iv) $\int \sec^2 x \, dx = \tan x + C$ (v) $\int \text{cosec}^2 x \, dx = -\cot x + C$

(vi) $\int \sec x \tan x \, dx = \sec x + C$

(vii) $\int \text{cosec}\, x \cot x \, dx = -\text{cosec}\, x + C$ (viii) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = \sin^{-1} x + C$

(ix) $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = -\cos^{-1} x + C$ (x) $\int \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = \tan^{-1} x + C$

(xi) $\int \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = -\cot^{-1} x + C$ (xii) $\int e^x dx = e^x + C$

(xiii) $\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\log a} + C$ (xiv) $\int \frac{1}{x} dx = \log |x| + C$

◆ Integration by partial fractions

Recall that a rational function is ratio of two polynomials of the form $\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)}$, where P(*x*) and Q (*x*) are polynomials in *x* and Q (*x*) ≠ 0. If degree of the polynomial P (*x*) is greater than the degree of the polynomial Q (*x*), then we may divide P (*x*) by Q (*x*) so that $\frac{P(x)}{Q(x)} = T(x) + \frac{P_1(x)}{Q(x)}$, where T(*x*) is a polynomial in *x* and degree of $P_1(x)$ is less than the degree of Q(*x*). T(*x*) being polynomial can be easily integrated. $\frac{P_1(x)}{Q(x)}$ can be integrated by expressing $\frac{P_1(x)}{Q(x)}$ as the sum of partial fractions of the following type:

1. $\frac{px+q}{(x-a)(x-b)} = \frac{A}{x-a} + \frac{B}{x-b}, \; a \neq b$

2. $\frac{px+q}{(x-a)^2} = \frac{A}{x-a} + \frac{B}{(x-a)^2}$

3. $\dfrac{px^2+qx+r}{(x-a)(x-b)(x-c)} = \dfrac{A}{x-a}+\dfrac{B}{x-b}+\dfrac{C}{x-c}$

4. $\dfrac{px^2+qx+r}{(x-a)^2(x-b)} = \dfrac{A}{x-a}+\dfrac{B}{(x-a)^2}+\dfrac{C}{x-b}$

5. $\dfrac{px^2+qx+r}{(x-a)(x^2+bx+c)} = \dfrac{A}{x-a}+\dfrac{Bx+C}{x^2+bx+c}$

where $x^2 + bx + c$ can not be factorised further.

- **Integration by substitution**

A change in the variable of integration often reduces an integral to one of the fundamental integrals. The method in which we change the variable to some other variable is called the method of substitution. When the integrand involves some trigonometric functions, we use some well known identities to find the integrals. Using substitution technique, we obtain the following standard integrals.

(i) $\int \tan x\, dx = \log|\sec x| + C$ (ii) $\int \cot x\, dx = \log|\sin x| + C$

(iii) $\int \sec x\, dx = \log|\sec x + \tan x| + C$

(iv) $\int \operatorname{cosec} x\, dx = \log|\operatorname{cosec} x - \cot x| + C$

- **Integrals of some special functions**

(i) $\int \dfrac{dx}{x^2-a^2} = \dfrac{1}{2a}\log\left|\dfrac{x-a}{x+a}\right| + C$

(ii) $\int \dfrac{dx}{a^2-x^2} = \dfrac{1}{2a}\log\left|\dfrac{a+x}{a-x}\right| + C$ (iii) $\int \dfrac{dx}{x^2+a^2} = \dfrac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\dfrac{x}{a} + C$

(iv) $\int \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}} = \log\left|x+\sqrt{x^2-a^2}\right| + C$ (v) $\int \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}} = \sin^{-1}\dfrac{x}{a} + C$

(vi) $\int \dfrac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}} = \log|x+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}| + C$

- **Integration by parts**

For given functions f_1 and f_2, we have

$\int f_1(x) \cdot f_2(x)\, dx = f_1(x) \int f_2(x)\, dx - \int \left[\frac{d}{dx} f_1(x) \cdot \int f_2(x)\, dx \right] dx$, i.e., the integral of the product of two functions = first function × integral of the second function – integral of {differential coefficient of the first function × integral of the second function}. Care must be taken in choosing the first function and the second function. Obviously, we must take that function as the second function whose integral is well known to us.

- $\int e^x [f(x) + f'(x)]\, dx = \int e^x f(x)\, dx + C$

- **Some special types of integrals**

  (i) $\int \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}\, dx = \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{x^2 - a^2} - \frac{a^2}{2} \log \left| x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2} \right| + C$

  (ii) $\int \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}\, dx = \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{x^2 + a^2} + \frac{a^2}{2} \log \left| x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2} \right| + C$

  (iii) $\int \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\, dx = \frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2} \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + C$

  (iv) Integrals of the types $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2 + bx + c}$ or $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{ax^2 + bx + c}}$ can be transformed into standard form by expressing

  $$ax^2 + bx + c = a\left[x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x + \frac{c}{a}\right] = a\left[\left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{c}{a} - \frac{b^2}{4a^2}\right)\right]$$

  (v) Integrals of the types $\int \frac{px + q\, dx}{ax^2 + bx + c}$ or $\int \frac{px + q\, dx}{\sqrt{ax^2 + bx + c}}$ can be transformed into standard form by expressing

  $px + q = A\frac{d}{dx}(ax^2 + bx + c) + B = A(2ax + b) + B$, where A and B are determined by comparing coefficients on both sides.

- We have defined $\int_a^b f(x)\, dx$ as the area of the region bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, $a \le x \le b$, the x-axis and the ordinates $x = a$ and $x = b$. Let x be a given point in $[a, b]$. Then $\int_a^x f(x)\,dx$ represents the **Area function** $A(x)$.

This concept of area function leads to the Fundamental Theorems of Integral Calculus.

- **First fundamental theorem of integral calculus**

Let the area function be defined by $A(x) = \int_a^x f(x)\,dx$ for all $x \geq a$, where the function f is assumed to be continuous on $[a, b]$. Then $A'(x) = f(x)$ for all $x \in [a, b]$.

- **Second fundamental theorem of integral calculus**

Let f be a continuous function of x defined on the closed interval $[a, b]$ and let F be another function such that $\frac{d}{dx} F(x) = f(x)$ for all x in the domain of f, then $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = [F(x) + C]_a^b = F(b) - F(a)$.

This is called the definite integral of f over the range $[a, b]$, where a and b are called the limits of integration, a being the lower limit and b the upper limit.

Chapter 8

APPLICATION OF INTEGRALS

❖ *One should study Mathematics because it is only through Mathematics that nature can be conceived in harmonious form. – BIRKHOFF* ❖

8.1 Introduction

In geometry, we have learnt formulae to calculate areas of various geometrical figures including triangles, rectangles, trapezias and circles. Such formulae are fundamental in the applications of mathematics to many real life problems. The formulae of elementary geometry allow us to calculate areas of many simple figures. However, they are inadequate for calculating the areas enclosed by curves. For that we shall need some concepts of Integral Calculus.

A.L. Cauchy (1789-1857)

In the previous chapter, we have studied to find the area bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, the ordinates $x = a$, $x = b$ and x-axis, while calculating definite integral as the limit of a sum. Here, in this chapter, we shall study a specific application of integrals to find the area under simple curves, area between lines and arcs of circles, parabolas and ellipses (standard forms only). We shall also deal with finding the area bounded by the above said curves.

8.2 Area under Simple Curves

In the previous chapter, we have studied definite integral as the limit of a sum and how to evaluate definite integral using Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. Now, we consider the easy and intuitive way of finding the area bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, x-axis and the ordinates $x = a$ and $x = b$. From Fig 8.1, we can think of area under the curve as composed of large number of very thin vertical strips. Consider an arbitrary strip of height y and width dx, then dA (area of the elementary strip) $= y\,dx$, where, $y = f(x)$.

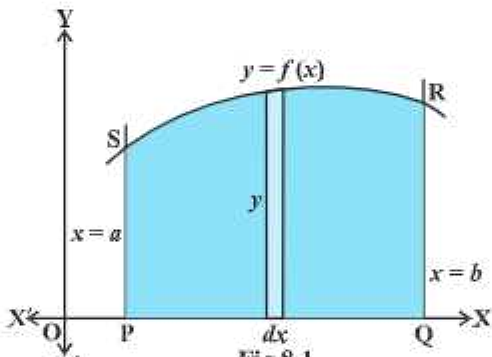


Fig 8.1

This area is called the *elementary area* which is located at an arbitrary position within the region which is specified by some value of x between a and b. We can think of the total area A of the region between x-axis, ordinates $x = a$, $x = b$ and the curve $y = f(x)$ as the result of adding up the elementary areas of thin strips across the region PQRSP. Symbolically, we express

$$A = \int_a^b dA = \int_a^b y dx = \int_a^b f(x)\, dx$$

The area A of the region bounded by the curve $x = g(y)$, y-axis and the lines $y = c$, $y = d$ is given by

$$A = \int_c^d x dy = \int_c^d g(y)\, dy$$

Here, we consider horizontal strips as shown in the Fig 8.2

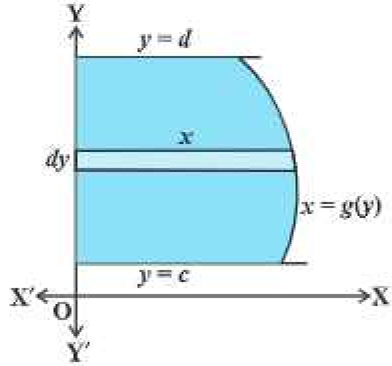


Fig 8.2

Remark If the position of the curve under consideration is below the x-axis, then since $f(x) < 0$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$, as shown in Fig 8.3, the area bounded by the curve, x-axis and the ordinates $x = a$, $x = b$ come out to be negative. But, it is only the numerical value of the area which is taken into consideration. Thus, if the area is negative, we take its absolute value, i.e., $\left|\int_a^b f(x)\, dx\right|$.

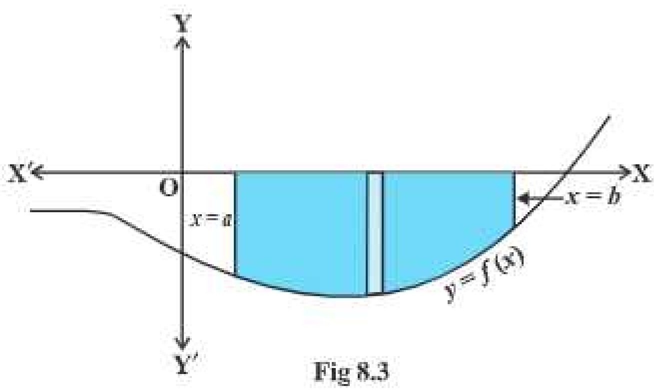


Fig 8.3

Generally, it may happen that some portion of the curve is above x-axis and some is below the x-axis as shown in the Fig 8.4. Here, $A_1 < 0$ and $A_2 > 0$. Therefore, the area A bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, x-axis and the ordinates $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by $A = |A_1| + A_2$.

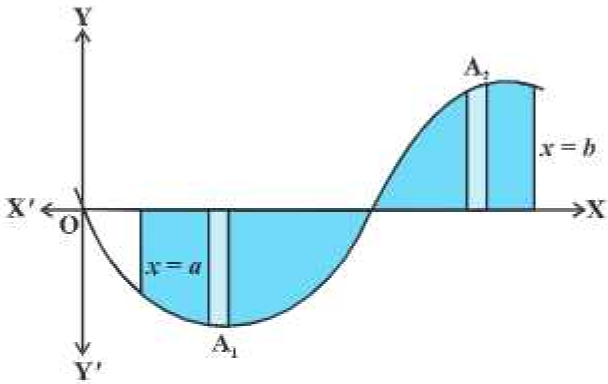


Fig 8.4

Example 1 Find the area enclosed by the circle $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$.

Solution From Fig 8.5, the whole area enclosed by the given circle

= 4 (area of the region AOBA bounded by the curve, x-axis and the ordinates $x = 0$ and $x = a$) [as the circle is symmetrical about both x-axis and y-axis]

$$= 4\int_0^a y\,dx \text{ (taking vertical strips)}$$

$$= 4\int_0^a \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\, dx$$

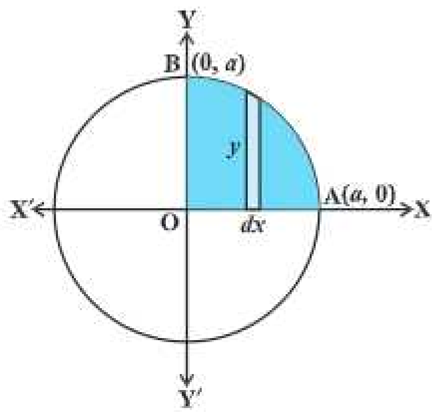


Fig 8.5

Since $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$ gives $\quad y = \pm\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$

As the region AOBA lies in the first quadrant, y is taken as positive. Integrating, we get the whole area enclosed by the given circle

$$= 4\left[\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}\right]_0^a$$

$$= 4\left[\left(\frac{a}{2}\times 0 + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}1\right) - 0\right] = 4\left(\frac{a^2}{2}\right)\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \pi a^2$$

Alternatively, considering horizontal strips as shown in Fig 8.6, the whole area of the region enclosed by circle

$$= 4\int_0^a x\,dy = 4\int_0^a \sqrt{a^2 - y^2}\,dy \qquad \text{(Why?)}$$

$$= 4\left[\frac{y}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - y^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{y}{a}\right]_0^a$$

$$= 4\left[\left(\frac{a}{2}\times 0 + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}1\right) - 0\right]$$

$$= 4\frac{a^2}{2}\frac{\pi}{2} = \pi a^2$$

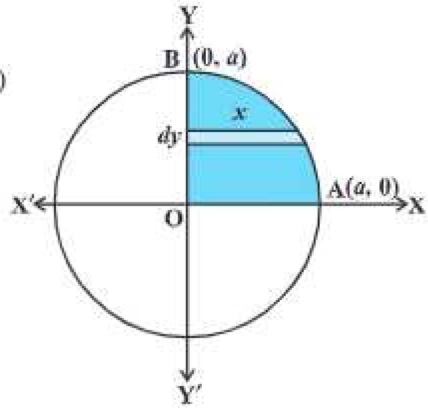


Fig 8.6

Example 2 Find the area enclosed by the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$

Solution From Fig 8.7, the area of the region ABA′B′A bounded by the ellipse

$$= 4\begin{pmatrix} \textit{area of the region AOBA in the first quadrant bounded} \\ \textit{by the curve, } x-\textit{axis and the ordinates } x = 0, x = a \end{pmatrix}$$

(as the ellipse is symmetrical about both x-axis and y-axis)

$$= 4\int_0^a y\,dx \quad \text{(taking vertical strips)}$$

Now $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ gives $y = \pm\frac{b}{a}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$, but as the region AOBA lies in the first quadrant, y is taken as positive. So, the required area is

$$= 4\int_0^a \frac{b}{a}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\,dx$$

$$= \frac{4b}{a}\left[\frac{x}{2}\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a}\right]_0^a \quad \text{(Why?)}$$

$$= \frac{4b}{a}\left[\left(\frac{a}{2}\times 0 + \frac{a^2}{2}\sin^{-1}1\right) - 0\right]$$

$$= \frac{4b}{a}\frac{a^2}{2}\frac{\pi}{2} = \pi ab$$

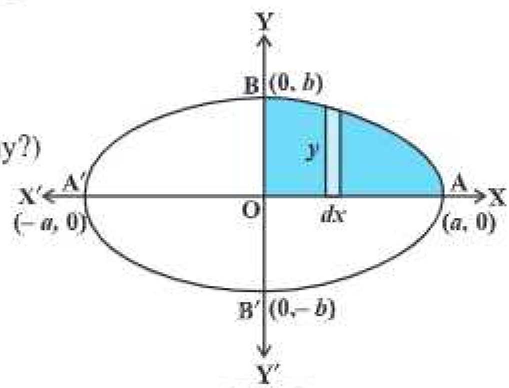


Fig 8.7

Alternatively, considering horizontal strips as shown in the Fig 8.8, the area of the ellipse is

$$= 4\int_0^b x\,dy = 4\frac{a}{b}\int_0^b \sqrt{b^2 - y^2}\,dy \quad \text{(Why?)}$$

$$= \frac{4a}{b}\left[\frac{y}{2}\sqrt{b^2 - y^2} + \frac{b^2}{2}\sin^{-1}\frac{y}{b}\right]_0^b$$

$$= \frac{4a}{b}\left[\left(\frac{b}{2}\times 0 + \frac{b^2}{2}\sin^{-1}1\right) - 0\right]$$

$$= \frac{4a}{b}\frac{b^2}{2}\frac{\pi}{2} = \pi ab$$

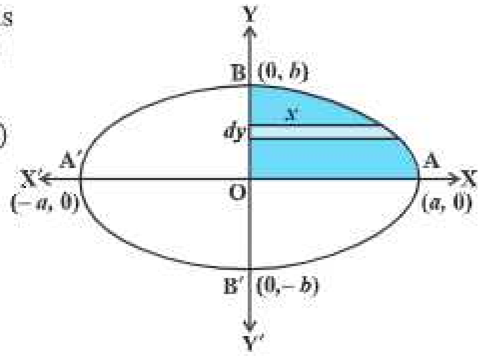


Fig 8.8

EXERCISE 8.1

1. Find the area of the region bounded by the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$.

2. Find the area of the region bounded by the ellipse $\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$.

Choose the correct answer in the following Exercises 3 and 4.

3. Area lying in the first quadrant and bounded by the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ and the lines $x = 0$ and $x = 2$ is

   (A) π (B) $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (C) $\frac{\pi}{3}$ (D) $\frac{\pi}{4}$

4. Area of the region bounded by the curve $y^2 = 4x$, y-axis and the line $y = 3$ is

   (A) 2 (B) $\frac{9}{4}$ (C) $\frac{9}{3}$ (D) $\frac{9}{2}$

Miscellaneous Examples

Example 3 Find the area of the region bounded by the line $y = 3x + 2$, the x-axis and the ordinates $x = -1$ and $x = 1$.

Solution As shown in the Fig 8.9, the line $y = 3x + 2$ meets x-axis at $x = \frac{-2}{3}$ and its graph lies below x-axis for $x \in \left(-1, \frac{-2}{3}\right)$ and above x-axis for $x \in \left(\frac{-2}{3}, 1\right)$.

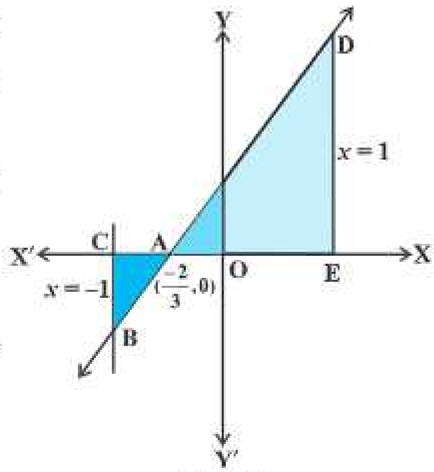


Fig 8.9

The required area = Area of the region ACBA + Area of the region ADEA

$$= \left|\int_{-1}^{\frac{-2}{3}} (3x+2)dx\right| + \int_{\frac{-2}{3}}^{1} (3x+2)dx$$

$$= \left|\left[\frac{3x^2}{2}+2x\right]_{-1}^{\frac{-2}{3}}\right| + \left[\frac{3x^2}{2}+2x\right]_{\frac{-2}{3}}^{1} = \frac{1}{6}+\frac{25}{6}=\frac{13}{3}$$

Example 4 Find the area bounded by the curve $y = \cos x$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 2\pi$.

Solution From the Fig 8.10, the required area = area of the region OABO + area of the region BCDB + area of the region DEFD.

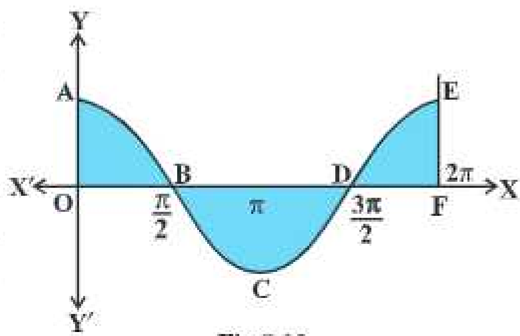


Fig 8.10

Thus, we have the required area

$$= \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos x\,dx + \left|\int_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{3\pi}{2}} \cos x\,dx\right| + \int_{\frac{3\pi}{2}}^{2\pi} \cos x\,dx$$

$$= [\sin x]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} + \left|[\sin x]_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{3\pi}{2}}\right| + [\sin x]_{\frac{3\pi}{2}}^{2\pi}$$

$$= 1 + 2 + 1 = 4$$

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 8

1. Find the area under the given curves and given lines:
   (i) $y = x^2$, $x = 1$, $x = 2$ and x-axis
   (ii) $y = x^4$, $x = 1$, $x = 5$ and x-axis

2. Sketch the graph of $y = |x+3|$ and evaluate $\int_{-6}^{0} |x+3|\,dx$.

3. Find the area bounded by the curve $y = \sin x$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 2\pi$.

Choose the correct answer in the following Exercises from 4 to 5.

4. Area bounded by the curve $y = x^3$, the x-axis and the ordinates $x = -2$ and $x = 1$ is

   (A) -9 (B) $\frac{-15}{4}$ (C) $\frac{15}{4}$ (D) $\frac{17}{4}$

5. The area bounded by the curve $y = x\,|x|$, x-axis and the ordinates $x = -1$ and $x = 1$ is given by

   (A) 0 (B) $\frac{1}{3}$ (C) $\frac{2}{3}$ (D) $\frac{4}{3}$

   [Hint : $y = x^2$ if $x > 0$ and $y = -x^2$ if $x < 0$].

Summary

- The area of the region bounded by the curve $y = f(x)$, x-axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ $(b > a)$ is given by the formula: $\text{Area} = \int_a^b y\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.
- The area of the region bounded by the curve $x = \phi(y)$, y-axis and the lines $y = c$, $y = d$ is given by the formula: $\text{Area} = \int_c^d x\,dy = \int_c^d \phi(y)\,dy$.

Historical Note

The origin of the Integral Calculus goes back to the early period of development of Mathematics and it is related to the method of exhaustion developed by the mathematicians of ancient Greece. This method arose in the solution of problems on calculating areas of plane figures, surface areas and volumes of solid bodies etc. In this sense, the method of exhaustion can be regarded as an early method of integration. The greatest development of method of exhaustion in the early period was obtained in the works of Eudoxus (440 B.C.) and Archimedes (300 B.C.)

Systematic approach to the theory of Calculus began in the 17th century. In 1665, Newton began his work on the Calculus described by him as the theory of fluxions and used his theory in finding the tangent and radius of curvature at any point on a curve. Newton introduced the basic notion of inverse function called the anti derivative (indefinite integral) or the inverse method of tangents.

During 1684-86, Leibnitz published an article in the *Acta Eruditorum* which he called *Calculas summatorius*, since it was connected with the summation of a number of infinitely small areas, whose sum, he indicated by the symbol '$\int$'. In 1696, he followed a suggestion made by J. Bernoulli and changed this article to Calculus integrali. This corresponded to Newton's inverse method of tangents.

Both Newton and Leibnitz adopted quite independent lines of approach which was radically different. However, respective theories accomplished results that were practically identical. Leibnitz used the notion of definite integral and what is quite certain is that he first clearly appreciated tie up between the antiderivative and the definite integral.

Conclusively, the fundamental concepts and theory of Integral Calculus and primarily its relationships with Differential Calculus were developed in the work of P.de Fermat, I. Newton and G. Leibnitz at the end of 17th century. However, this justification by the concept of limit was only developed in the works of A.L. Cauchy in the early 19th century. Lastly, it is worth mentioning the following quotation by Lie Sophie's:

"It may be said that the conceptions of differential quotient and integral which in their origin certainly go back to Archimedes were introduced in Science by the investigations of Kepler, Descartes, Cavalieri, Fermat and Wallis .... The discovery that differentiation and integration are inverse operations belongs to Newton and Leibnitz".

Chapter 9

DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS

❖ *He who seeks for methods without having a definite problem in mind seeks for the most part in vain. – D. HILBERT* ❖

9.1 Introduction

Henri Poincare
(1854-1912)

In Class XI and in Chapter 5 of the present book, we discussed how to differentiate a given function f with respect to an independent variable, i.e., how to find $f'(x)$ for a given function f at each x in its domain of definition. Further, in the chapter on Integral Calculus, we discussed how to find a function f whose derivative is the function g, which may also be formulated as follows:

For a given function g, find a function f such that

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = g(x), \text{ where } y = f(x) \qquad \ldots (1)$$

An equation of the form (1) is known as a *differential equation*. A formal definition will be given later.

These equations arise in a variety of applications, may it be in Physics, Chemistry, Biology, Anthropology, Geology, Economics etc. Hence, an indepth study of differential equations has assumed prime importance in all modern scientific investigations.

In this chapter, we will study some basic concepts related to differential equation, general and particular solutions of a differential equation, formation of differential equations, some methods to solve a first order - first degree differential equation and some applications of differential equations in different areas.

9.2 Basic Concepts

We are already familiar with the equations of the type:

$$x^2 - 3x + 3 = 0 \qquad \ldots (1)$$

$$\sin x + \cos x = 0 \qquad \ldots (2)$$

$$x + y = 7 \qquad \ldots (3)$$

Let us consider the equation:

$$x\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0 \qquad \text{... (4)}$$

We see that equations (1), (2) and (3) involve independent and/or dependent variable (variables) only but equation (4) involves variables as well as derivative of the dependent variable y with respect to the independent variable x. Such an equation is called a *differential equation*.

In general, an equation involving derivative (derivatives) of the dependent variable with respect to independent variable (variables) is called a differential equation.

A differential equation involving derivatives of the dependent variable with respect to only one independent variable is called an ordinary differential equation, e.g.,

$$2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^3 = 0 \text{ is an ordinary differential equation} \qquad \text{.... (5)}$$

Of course, there are differential equations involving derivatives with respect to more than one independent variables, called partial differential equations but at this stage we shall confine ourselves to the study of ordinary differential equations only. Now onward, we will use the term 'differential equation' for 'ordinary differential equation'.

Note

1. We shall prefer to use the following notations for derivatives:

   $$\frac{dy}{dx} = y', \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = y'', \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = y'''$$

2. For derivatives of higher order, it will be inconvenient to use so many dashes as supersuffix therefore, we use the notation y_n for nth order derivative $\frac{d^ny}{dx^n}$.

9.2.1. *Order of a differential equation*

Order of a differential equation is defined as the order of the highest order derivative of the dependent variable with respect to the independent variable involved in the given differential equation.

Consider the following differential equations:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^x \qquad \text{... (6)}$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + y = 0 \qquad \text{... (7)}$$

$$\left(\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}\right) + x^2\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^3 = 0 \qquad \text{... (8)}$$

The equations (6), (7) and (8) involve the highest derivative of first, second and third order respectively. Therefore, the order of these equations are 1, 2 and 3 respectively.

9.2.2 *Degree of a differential equation*

To study the degree of a differential equation, the key point is that the differential equation must be a polynomial equation in derivatives, i.e., y', y'', y''' etc. Consider the following differential equations:

$$\frac{d^3y}{dx^3} + 2\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^2 - \frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0 \qquad \text{... (9)}$$

$$\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) - \sin^2 y = 0 \qquad \text{... (10)}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \sin\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = 0 \qquad \text{... (11)}$$

We observe that equation (9) is a polynomial equation in y''', y'' and y', equation (10) is a polynomial equation in y' (not a polynomial in y though). Degree of such differential equations can be defined. But equation (11) is not a polynomial equation in y' and degree of such a differential equation can not be defined.

By the degree of a differential equation, when it is a polynomial equation in derivatives, we mean the highest power (positive integral index) of the highest order derivative involved in the given differential equation.

In view of the above definition, one may observe that differential equations (6), (7), (8) and (9) each are of degree one, equation (10) is of degree two while the degree of differential equation (11) is not defined.

Note Order and degree (if defined) of a differential equation are always positive integers.

Example 1 Find the order and degree, if defined, of each of the following differential equations:

(i) $\frac{dy}{dx} - \cos x = 0$ (ii) $xy\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + x\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 - y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$

(iii) $y''' + y^2 + e^{y'} = 0$

Solution

(i) The highest order derivative present in the differential equation is $\frac{dy}{dx}$, so its order is one. It is a polynomial equation in y' and the highest power raised to $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is one, so its degree is one.

(ii) The highest order derivative present in the given differential equation is $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$, so its order is two. It is a polynomial equation in $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ and $\frac{dy}{dx}$ and the highest power raised to $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ is one, so its degree is one.

(iii) The highest order derivative present in the differential equation is y''', so its order is three. The given differential equation is not a polynomial equation in its derivatives and so its degree is not defined.

EXERCISE 9.1

Determine order and degree (if defined) of differential equations given in Exercises 1 to 10.

1. $\frac{d^4y}{dx^4} + \sin(y''') = 0$ **2.** $y' + 5y = 0$ **3.** $\left(\frac{ds}{dt}\right)^4 + 3s\frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = 0$

4. $\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^2 + \cos\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = 0$ **5.** $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \cos 3x + \sin 3x$

6. $(y''')^2 + (y'')^3 + (y')^4 + y^5 = 0$ **7.** $y''' + 2y'' + y' = 0$

8. $y' + y = e^x$ **9.** $y'' + (y')^2 + 2y = 0$ **10.** $y'' + 2y' + \sin y = 0$

11. The degree of the differential equation

$$\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right)^3 + \left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2 + \sin\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) + 1 = 0 \text{ is}$$

(A) 3 (B) 2 (C) 1 (D) not defined

12. The order of the differential equation

$$2x^2\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} - 3\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 0 \text{ is}$$

(A) 2 (B) 1 (C) 0 (D) not defined

9.3. General and Particular Solutions of a Differential Equation

In earlier Classes, we have solved the equations of the type:

$$x^2 + 1 = 0 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

$$\sin^2 x - \cos x = 0 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Solution of equations (1) and (2) are numbers, real or complex, that will satisfy the given equation i.e., when that number is substituted for the unknown x in the given equation, L.H.S. becomes equal to the R.H.S..

Now consider the differential equation $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + y = 0$ ... (3)

In contrast to the first two equations, the solution of this differential equation is a function ϕ that will satisfy it i.e., when the function ϕ is substituted for the unknown y (dependent variable) in the given differential equation, L.H.S. becomes equal to R.H.S..

The curve $y = \phi(x)$ is called the solution curve (integral curve) of the given differential equation. Consider the function given by

$$y = \phi(x) = a \sin(x + b), \quad \text{... (4)}$$

where $a, b \in \mathbf{R}$. When this function and its derivative are substituted in equation (3), L.H.S. = R.H.S.. So it is a solution of the differential equation (3).

Let a and b be given some particular values say $a = 2$ and $b = \frac{\pi}{4}$, then we get a function

$$y = \phi_1(x) = 2\sin\left(x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \quad \text{... (5)}$$

When this function and its derivative are substituted in equation (3) again L.H.S. = R.H.S.. Therefore ϕ_1 is also a solution of equation (3).

Function ϕ consists of two arbitrary constants (parameters) a, b and it is called *general solution* of the given differential equation. Whereas function ϕ_1 contains no arbitrary constants but only the particular values of the parameters a and b and hence is called a *particular solution* of the given differential equation.

The solution which contains arbitrary constants is called the *general solution* (*primitive*) of the differential equation.

The solution free from arbitrary constants i.e., the solution obtained from the general solution by giving particular values to the arbitrary constants is called a *particular solution* of the differential equation.

Example 2 Verify that the function $y = e^{-3x}$ is a solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + \frac{dy}{dx} - 6y = 0$$

Solution Given function is $y = e^{-3x}$. Differentiating both sides of equation with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -3e^{-3x} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Now, differentiating (1) with respect to x, we have

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 9\,e^{-3x}$$

Substituting the values of $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{dy}{dx}$ and y in the given differential equation, we get

L.H.S. $= 9\,e^{-3x} + (-3e^{-3x}) - 6.e^{-3x} = 9\,e^{-3x} - 9\,e^{-3x} = 0 =$ R.H.S..

Therefore, the given function is a solution of the given differential equation.

Example 3 Verify that the function $y = a \cos x + b \sin x$, where, $a, b \in \mathbf{R}$ is a solution of the differential equation $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} + y = 0$

Solution The given function is

$$y = a \cos x + b \sin x \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Differentiating both sides of equation (1) with respect to x, successively, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -a \sin x + b \cos x$$

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = -a \cos x - b \sin x$$

Substituting the values of $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ and y in the given differential equation, we get

L.H.S. = $(-a\cos x - b\sin x) + (a\cos x + b\sin x) = 0$ = R.H.S.

Therefore, the given function is a solution of the given differential equation.

EXERCISE 9.2

In each of the Exercises 1 to 10 verify that the given functions (explicit or implicit) is a solution of the corresponding differential equation:

1. $y = e^x + 1$: $y'' - y' = 0$
2. $y = x^2 + 2x + C$: $y' - 2x - 2 = 0$
3. $y = \cos x + C$: $y' + \sin x = 0$
4. $y = \sqrt{1+x^2}$: $y' = \frac{xy}{1+x^2}$
5. $y = Ax$: $xy' = y\ (x \neq 0)$
6. $y = x\sin x$: $xy' = y + x\sqrt{x^2 - y^2}\ (x \neq 0 \text{ and } x > y \text{ or } x < -y)$
7. $xy = \log y + C$: $y' = \frac{y^2}{1-xy}\ (xy \neq 1)$
8. $y - \cos y = x$: $(y\sin y + \cos y + x)\,y' = y$
9. $x + y = \tan^{-1}y$: $y^2 y' + y^2 + 1 = 0$
10. $y = \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\ x \in (-a, a)$: $x + y\frac{dy}{dx} = 0\ (y \neq 0)$
11. The number of arbitrary constants in the general solution of a differential equation of fourth order are:
    (A) 0 (B) 2 (C) 3 (D) 4
12. The number of arbitrary constants in the particular solution of a differential equation of third order are:
    (A) 3 (B) 2 (C) 1 (D) 0

9.4. Methods of Solving First Order, First Degree Differential Equations

In this section we shall discuss three methods of solving first order first degree differential equations.

9.4.1 *Differential equations with variables separable*

A first order-first degree differential equation is of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = F(x, y) \qquad \dots (1)$$

If F (x, y) can be expressed as a product g (x) $h(y)$, where, $g(x)$ is a function of x and $h(y)$ is a function of y, then the differential equation (1) is said to be of variable separable type. The differential equation (1) then has the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = h(y) \,.\, g(x) \quad \text{... (2)}$$

If $h(y) \neq 0$, separating the variables, (2) can be rewritten as

$$\frac{1}{h(y)}\, dy = g(x)\, dx \quad \text{... (3)}$$

Integrating both sides of (3), we get

$$\int \frac{1}{h(y)}\, dy = \int g(x)\, dx \quad \text{... (4)}$$

Thus, (4) provides the solutions of given differential equation in the form

$$\text{H}(y) = \text{G}(x) + \text{C}$$

Here, H (y) and G (x) are the anti derivatives of $\frac{1}{h(y)}$ and $g(x)$ respectively and C is the arbitrary constant.

Example 4 Find the general solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x+1}{2-y}$, $(y \neq 2)$

Solution We have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x+1}{2-y} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Separating the variables in equation (1), we get

$$(2 - y)\, dy = (x + 1)\, dx \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (2), we get

$$\int (2-y)\, dy = \int (x+1)\, dx$$

or $$2y - \frac{y^2}{2} = \frac{x^2}{2} + x + \text{C}_1$$

or $$x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 4y + 2\,\text{C}_1 = 0$$

or $$x^2 + y^2 + 2x - 4y + \text{C} = 0, \text{ where C} = 2\text{C}_1$$

which is the general solution of equation (1).

Example 5 Find the general solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{1+y^2}{1+x^2}$.

Solution Since $1 + y^2 \neq 0$, therefore separating the variables, the given differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{dy}{1+y^2} = \frac{dx}{1+x^2} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (1), we get

$$\int\frac{dy}{1+y^2} = \int\frac{dx}{1+x^2}$$

or $$\tan^{-1} y = \tan^{-1}x + C$$

which is the general solution of equation (1).

Example 6 Find the particular solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx}=-4xy^2$ given that $y = 1$, when $x = 0$.

Solution If $y \neq 0$, the given differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{dy}{y^2} = -\,4x\,dx \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (1), we get

$$\int\frac{dy}{y^2} = -4\int x\,dx$$

or $$-\frac{1}{y} = -\,2x^2 + C$$

or $$y = \frac{1}{2x^2 - C} \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Substituting $y = 1$ and $x = 0$ in equation (2), we get, $C = -\,1$.

Now substituting the value of C in equation (2), we get the particular solution of the given differential equation as $y=\frac{1}{2x^2+1}$.

Example 7 Find the equation of the curve passing through the point (1, 1) whose differential equation is $x\,dy = (2x^2 + 1)\,dx$ $(x \neq 0)$.

Solution The given differential equation can be expressed as

$$dy^* = \left(\frac{2x^2+1}{x}\right)dx^*$$

or
$$dy = \left(2x+\frac{1}{x}\right)dx \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (1), we get

$$\int dy = \int\left(2x+\frac{1}{x}\right)dx$$

or
$$y = x^2 + \log|x| + C \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Equation (2) represents the family of solution curves of the given differential equation but we are interested in finding the equation of a particular member of the family which passes through the point (1, 1). Therefore substituting $x = 1$, $y = 1$ in equation (2), we get C = 0.

Now substituting the value of C in equation (2) we get the equation of the required curve as $y = x^2 + \log|x|$.

Example 8 Find the equation of a curve passing through the point (–2, 3), given that the slope of the tangent to the curve at any point (x, y) is $\frac{2x}{y^2}$.

Solution We know that the slope of the tangent to a curve is given by $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

so,
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2x}{y^2} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Separating the variables, equation (1) can be written as

$$y^2\,dy = 2x\,dx \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (2), we get

$$\int y^2 dy = \int 2x\,dx$$

or
$$\frac{y^3}{3} = x^2 + C \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

---

* The notation $\frac{dy}{dx}$ due to Leibnitz is extremely flexible and useful in many calculation and formal transformations, where, we can deal with symbols dy and dx exactly as if they were ordinary numbers. By treating dx and dy like separate entities, we can give neater expressions to many calculations.

Refer: Introduction to Calculus and Analysis, volume-I page 172, By Richard Courant, Fritz John Spinger – Verlog New York.

Substituting $x = -2$, $y = 3$ in equation (3), we get C = 5.

Substituting the value of C in equation (3), we get the equation of the required curve as

$$\frac{y^3}{3} = x^2 + 5 \quad \text{or} \quad y = (3x^2 + 15)^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

Example 9 In a bank, principal increases continuously at the rate of 5% per year. In how many years Rs 1000 double itself?

Solution Let P be the principal at any time t. According to the given problem,

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \left(\frac{5}{100}\right) \times \mathrm{P}$$

or $$\frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{\mathrm{P}}{20} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

separating the variables in equation (1), we get

$$\frac{dp}{\mathrm{P}} = \frac{dt}{20} \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (2), we get

$$\log \mathrm{P} = \frac{t}{20} + \mathrm{C}_1$$

or $$\mathrm{P} = e^{\frac{t}{20}} \cdot e^{\mathrm{C}_1}$$

or $$\mathrm{P} = \mathrm{C}\, e^{\frac{t}{20}} \quad (\text{where } e^{\mathrm{C}_1} = \mathrm{C}) \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Now $$\mathrm{P} = 1000, \quad \text{when } t = 0$$

Substituting the values of P and t in (3), we get C = 1000. Therefore, equation (3), gives

$$\mathrm{P} = 1000\, e^{\frac{t}{20}}$$

Let t years be the time required to double the principal. Then

$$2000 = 1000\, e^{\frac{t}{20}} \quad \Rightarrow \quad t = 20 \log_e 2$$

EXERCISE 9.3

For each of the differential equations in Exercises 1 to 10, find the general solution:

1. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1 - \cos x}{1 + \cos x}$

2. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \sqrt{4 - y^2} \quad (-2 < y < 2)$

3. $\frac{dy}{dx} + y = 1 \; (y \neq 1)$

4. $\sec^2 x \tan y \, dx + \sec^2 y \tan x \, dy = 0$

5. $(e^x + e^{-x}) \, dy - (e^x - e^{-x}) \, dx = 0$

6. $\frac{dy}{dx} = (1 + x^2)(1 + y^2)$

7. $y \log y \, dx - x \, dy = 0$

8. $x^5 \frac{dy}{dx} = - y^5$

9. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \sin^{-1} x$

10. $e^x \tan y \, dx + (1 - e^x) \sec^2 y \, dy = 0$

For each of the differential equations in Exercises 11 to 14, find a particular solution satisfying the given condition:

11. $(x^3 + x^2 + x + 1) \frac{dy}{dx} = 2x^2 + x$; $y = 1$ when $x = 0$

12. $x(x^2 - 1) \frac{dy}{dx} = 1$; $y = 0$ when $x = 2$

13. $\cos \left(\frac{dy}{dx} \right) = a \quad (a \in \mathbf{R})$; $y = 1$ when $x = 0$

14. $\frac{dy}{dx} = y \tan x$; $y = 1$ when $x = 0$

15. Find the equation of a curve passing through the point (0, 0) and whose differential equation is $y' = e^x \sin x$.

16. For the differential equation $xy \frac{dy}{dx} = (x + 2)(y + 2)$, find the solution curve passing through the point (1, –1).

17. Find the equation of a curve passing through the point (0, –2) given that at any point (x, y) on the curve, the product of the slope of its tangent and y coordinate of the point is equal to the x coordinate of the point.

18. At any point (x, y) of a curve, the slope of the tangent is twice the slope of the line segment joining the point of contact to the point (– 4, –3). Find the equation of the curve given that it passes through (–2, 1).

19. The volume of spherical balloon being inflated changes at a constant rate. If initially its radius is 3 units and after 3 seconds it is 6 units. Find the radius of balloon after t seconds.

20. In a bank, principal increases continuously at the rate of $r\%$ per year. Find the value of r if Rs 100 double itself in 10 years ($\log_e 2 = 0.6931$).

21. In a bank, principal increases continuously at the rate of 5% per year. An amount of Rs 1000 is deposited with this bank, how much will it worth after 10 years ($e^{0.5} = 1.648$).

22. In a culture, the bacteria count is 1,00,000. The number is increased by 10% in 2 hours. In how many hours will the count reach 2,00,000, if the rate of growth of bacteria is proportional to the number present?

23. The general solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{x+y}$ is

(A) $e^x + e^{-y} = C$ (B) $e^x + e^y = C$

(C) $e^{-x} + e^y = C$ (D) $e^{-x} + e^{-y} = C$

9.4.2 *Homogeneous differential equations*

Consider the following functions in x and y

$F_1(x, y) = y^2 + 2xy$, $F_2(x, y) = 2x - 3y$,

$F_3(x, y) = \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$, $F_4(x, y) = \sin x + \cos y$

If we replace x and y by λx and λy respectively in the above functions, for any nonzero constant λ, we get

$$F_1(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \lambda^2 (y^2 + 2xy) = \lambda^2 F_1(x, y)$$

$$F_2(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \lambda (2x - 3y) = \lambda F_2(x, y)$$

$$F_3(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \cos\left(\frac{\lambda y}{\lambda x}\right) = \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \lambda^0 F_3(x, y)$$

$$F_4(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \sin \lambda x + \cos \lambda y \neq \lambda^n F_4(x, y), \text{ for any } n \in \mathbf{N}$$

Here, we observe that the functions F_1, F_2, F_3 can be written in the form $F(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \lambda^n F(x, y)$ but F_4 can not be written in this form. This leads to the following definition:

A function $F(x, y)$ is said to be *homogeneous function of degree n* if

$F(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \lambda^n F(x, y)$ for any nonzero constant λ.

We note that in the above examples, F_1, F_2, F_3 are homogeneous functions of degree 2, 1, 0 respectively but F_4 is not a homogeneous function.

We also observe that

$$F_1(x, y) = x^2\left(\frac{y^2}{x^2}+\frac{2y}{x}\right)=x^2h_1\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

or
$$F_1(x, y) = y^2\left(1+\frac{2x}{y}\right)=y^2h_2\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)$$

$$F_2(x, y) = x^1\left(2-\frac{3y}{x}\right)=x^1h_3\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

or
$$F_2(x, y) = y^1\left(2\frac{x}{y}-3\right)=y^1h_4\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)$$

$$F_3(x, y) = x^0\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)=x^0\, h_5\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

$$F_4(x, y) \neq x^n\, h_6\left(\frac{y}{x}\right), \text{ for any } n \in \mathbf{N}$$

or
$$F_4\,(x, y) \neq y^n\, h_7\left(\frac{x}{y}\right), \text{ for any } n \in \mathbf{N}$$

Therefore, a function F (x, y) is a homogeneous function of degree n if

$$F\,(x, y) = x^n g\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \quad \text{or} \quad y^n h\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)$$

A differential equation of the form $\frac{dy}{dx}=$ F (x, y) is said to be *homogenous* if F(x, y) is a homogenous function of degree zero.

To solve a homogeneous differential equation of the type

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=F(x,y) = g\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \quad \text{... (1)}$$

We make the substitution $y = v\,.\,x$ ... (2)

Differentiating equation (2) with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = v + x\frac{dv}{dx} \quad \text{... (3)}$$

Substituting the value of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ from equation (3) in equation (1), we get

$$v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = g(v)$$

or $$x\frac{dv}{dx} = g(v) - v \qquad \text{... (4)}$$

Separating the variables in equation (4), we get

$$\frac{dv}{g(v) - v} = \frac{dx}{x} \qquad \text{... (5)}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (5), we get

$$\int \frac{dv}{g(v) - v} = \int \frac{1}{x}dx + C \qquad \text{... (6)}$$

Equation (6) gives general solution (primitive) of the differential equation (1) when we replace v by $\frac{y}{x}$.

Note If the homogeneous differential equation is in the form $\frac{dx}{dy} = F(x, y)$ where, F (x, y) is homogenous function of degree zero, then we make substitution $\frac{x}{y} = v$ i.e., $x = vy$ and we proceed further to find the general solution as discussed above by writing $\frac{dx}{dy} = F(x, y) = h\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)$.

Example 10 Show that the differential equation $(x - y)\frac{dy}{dx} = x + 2y$ is homogeneous and solve it.

Solution The given differential equation can be expressed as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x + 2y}{x - y} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Let $$F(x, y) = \frac{x + 2y}{x - y}$$

Now $$F(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \frac{\lambda(x + 2y)}{\lambda(x - y)} = \lambda^0 \cdot f(x, y)$$

Therefore, F (x, y) is a homogenous function of degree zero. So, the given differential equation is a homogenous differential equation.

Alternatively,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \left(\frac{1+\frac{2y}{x}}{1-\frac{y}{x}}\right) = g\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

R.H.S. of differential equation (2) is of the form $g\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$ and so it is a homogeneous function of degree zero. Therefore, equation (1) is a homogeneous differential equation. To solve it we make the substitution

$$y = vx \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Differentiating equation (3) with respect to, x we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = v + x\frac{dv}{dx} \qquad \text{... (4)}$$

Substituting the value of y and $\frac{dy}{dx}$ in equation (1) we get

$$v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{1+2v}{1-v}$$

or
$$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{1+2v}{1-v} - v$$

or
$$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v^2+v+1}{1-v}$$

or
$$\frac{v-1}{v^2+v+1}dv = \frac{-dx}{x}$$

Integrating both sides of equation (5), we get

$$\int \frac{v-1}{v^2+v+1}dv = -\int \frac{dx}{x}$$

or
$$\frac{1}{2}\int \frac{2v+1-3}{v^2+v+1}dv = -\log|x| + C_1$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\int\frac{2v+1}{v^2+v+1}dv-\frac{3}{2}\int\frac{1}{v^2+v+1}dv=-\log|x|+C_1$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\log|v^2+v+1|-\frac{3}{2}\int\frac{1}{\left(v+\frac{1}{2}\right)^2+\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)^2}dv=-\log|x|+C_1$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\log|v^2+v+1|-\frac{3}{2}\cdot\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2v+1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)=-\log|x|+C_1$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\log|v^2+v+1|+\frac{1}{2}\log x^2=\sqrt{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2v+1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)+C_1 \qquad \text{(Why?)}$$

Replacing v by $\frac{y}{x}$, we get

or $$\frac{1}{2}\log\left|\frac{y^2}{x^2}+\frac{y}{x}+1\right|+\frac{1}{2}\log x^2=\sqrt{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2y+x}{\sqrt{3}x}\right)+C_1$$

or $$\frac{1}{2}\log\left|\left(\frac{y^2}{x^2}+\frac{y}{x}+1\right)x^2\right|=\sqrt{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2y+x}{\sqrt{3}x}\right)+C_1$$

or $$\log|(y^2+xy+x^2)|=2\sqrt{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2y+x}{\sqrt{3}x}\right)+2C_1$$

or $$\log|(x^2+xy+y^2)|=2\sqrt{3}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x+2y}{\sqrt{3}x}\right)+C$$

which is the general solution of the differential equation (1)

Example 11 Show that the differential equation $x\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\frac{dy}{dx}=y\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)+x$ is homogeneous and solve it.

Solution The given differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{dy}{dx}=\frac{y\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)+x}{x\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

It is a differential equation of the form $\frac{dy}{dx}=F(x, y)$.

Here
$$F(x, y) = \frac{y\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)+x}{x\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)}$$

Replacing x by λx and y by λy, we get

$$F(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \frac{\lambda\left[y\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)+x\right]}{\lambda\left(x\cos\frac{y}{x}\right)} = \lambda^0\,[F(x, y)]$$

Thus, $F(x, y)$ is a homogeneous function of degree zero.

Therefore, the given differential equation is a homogeneous differential equation. To solve it we make the substitution

$$y = vx \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Differentiating equation (2) with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = v + x\frac{dv}{dx} \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Substituting the value of y and $\frac{dy}{dx}$ in equation (1), we get

$$v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v\cos v+1}{\cos v}$$

or
$$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v\cos v+1}{\cos v}-v$$

or
$$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{1}{\cos v}$$

or
$$\cos v\; dv = \frac{dx}{x}$$

Therefore
$$\int \cos v\; dv = \int \frac{1}{x}\,dx$$

or $\sin v = \log |x| + \log |C|$

or $\sin v = \log |Cx|$

Replacing v by $\frac{y}{x}$, we get

$$\sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \log |Cx|$$

which is the general solution of the differential equation (1).

Example 12 Show that the differential equation $2y\, e^{\frac{x}{y}} dx + \left(y - 2x\, e^{\frac{x}{y}}\right) dy = 0$ is homogeneous and find its particular solution, given that, $x = 0$ when $y = 1$.

Solution The given differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{2x\, e^{\frac{x}{y}} - y}{2y\, e^{\frac{x}{y}}} \qquad \ldots (1)$$

Let $$F(x, y) = \frac{2xe^{\frac{x}{y}} - y}{2ye^{\frac{x}{y}}}$$

Then $$F(\lambda x, \lambda y) = \frac{\lambda\left(2xe^{\frac{x}{y}} - y\right)}{\lambda\left(2ye^{\frac{x}{y}}\right)} = \lambda^0 [F(x, y)]$$

Thus, $F(x, y)$ is a homogeneous function of degree zero. Therefore, the given differential equation is a homogeneous differential equation.

To solve it, we make the substitution

$$x = vy \qquad \ldots (2)$$

Differentiating equation (2) with respect to y, we get

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = v + y\frac{dv}{dy}$$

Substituting the value of x and $\frac{dx}{dy}$ in equation (1), we get

$$v + y\frac{dv}{dy} = \frac{2v\,e^v - 1}{2e^v}$$

or $$y\frac{dv}{dy} = \frac{2v\,e^v - 1}{2e^v} - v$$

or $$y\frac{dv}{dy} = -\frac{1}{2e^v}$$

or $$2e^v\,dv = \frac{-dy}{y}$$

or $$\int 2e^v \cdot dv = -\int \frac{dy}{y}$$

or $$2\,e^v = -\log|y| + C$$

and replacing v by $\frac{x}{y}$, we get

$$2\,e^{\frac{x}{y}} + \log|y| = C \qquad \ldots (3)$$

Substituting $x = 0$ and $y = 1$ in equation (3), we get

$$2\,e^0 + \log|1| = C \Rightarrow C = 2$$

Substituting the value of C in equation (3), we get

$$2\,e^{\frac{x}{y}} + \log|y| = 2$$

which is the particular solution of the given differential equation.

Example 13 Show that the family of curves for which the slope of the tangent at any point (x, y) on it is $\frac{x^2 + y^2}{2xy}$, is given by $x^2 - y^2 = cx$.

Solution We know that the slope of the tangent at any point on a curve is $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

Therefore, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x^2 + y^2}{2xy}$$

or $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1+\frac{y^2}{x^2}}{\frac{2y}{x}} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Clearly, (1) is a homogenous differential equation. To solve it we make substitution

$$y = vx$$

Differentiating $y = vx$ with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = v + x\frac{dv}{dx}$$

or $$v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{1+v^2}{2v}$$

or $$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{1-v^2}{2v}$$

$$\frac{2v}{1-v^2}dv = \frac{dx}{x}$$

or $$\frac{2v}{v^2-1}dv = -\frac{dx}{x}$$

Therefore $$\int\frac{2v}{v^2-1}dv = -\int\frac{1}{x}dx$$

or $$\log|v^2-1| = -\log|x| + \log|C_1|$$

or $$\log|(v^2-1)(x)| = \log|C_1|$$

or $$(v^2-1)\,x = \pm C_1$$

Replacing v by $\frac{y}{x}$, we get

$$\left(\frac{y^2}{x^2}-1\right)x = \pm C_1$$

or $$(y^2-x^2) = \pm C_1\,x \text{ or } x^2-y^2 = Cx$$

EXERCISE 9.4

In each of the Exercises 1 to 10, show that the given differential equation is homogeneous and solve each of them.

1. $(x^2 + xy)\,dy = (x^2 + y^2)\,dx$

2. $y' = \frac{x+y}{x}$

3. $(x - y)\,dy - (x + y)\,dx = 0$

4. $(x^2 - y^2)\,dx + 2xy\,dy = 0$

5. $x^2\frac{dy}{dx} = x^2 - 2y^2 + xy$

6. $x\,dy - y\,dx = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}\,dx$

7. $\left\{x\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) + y\sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right\}y\,dx = \left\{y\sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) - x\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right\}x\,dy$

8. $x\frac{dy}{dx} - y + x\sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = 0$

9. $y\,dx + x\log\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)dy - 2x\,dy = 0$

10. $\left(1 + e^{\frac{x}{y}}\right)dx + e^{\frac{x}{y}}\left(1 - \frac{x}{y}\right)dy = 0$

For each of the differential equations in Exercises from 11 to 15, find the particular solution satisfying the given condition:

11. $(x + y)\,dy + (x - y)\,dx = 0$; $y = 1$ when $x = 1$

12. $x^2\,dy + (xy + y^2)\,dx = 0$; $y = 1$ when $x = 1$

13. $\left[x\sin^2\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) - y\right]dx + x\,dy = 0$; $y = \frac{\pi}{4}$ when $x = 1$

14. $\frac{dy}{dx} - \frac{y}{x} + \operatorname{cosec}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = 0$; $y = 0$ when $x = 1$

15. $2xy + y^2 - 2x^2\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$; $y = 2$ when $x = 1$

16. A homogeneous differential equation of the from $\frac{dx}{dy} = h\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)$ can be solved by making the substitution.

(A) $y = vx$ (B) $v = yx$ (C) $x = vy$ (D) $x = v$

17. Which of the following is a homogeneous differential equation?

(A) $(4x + 6y + 5)\, dy - (3y + 2x + 4)\, dx = 0$

(B) $(xy)\, dx - (x^3 + y^3)\, dy = 0$

(C) $(x^3 + 2y^2)\, dx + 2xy\, dy = 0$

(D) $y^2\, dx + (x^2 - xy - y^2)\, dy = 0$

9.4.3 *Linear differential equations*

A differential equation of the from

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \mathrm{P}y = \mathrm{Q}$$

where, P and Q are constants or functions of x only, is known as a first order linear differential equation. Some examples of the first order linear differential equation are

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + y = \sin x$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \left(\frac{1}{x}\right) y = e^x$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \left(\frac{y}{x \log x}\right) = \frac{1}{x}$$

Another form of first order linear differential equation is

$$\frac{dx}{dy} + \mathrm{P}_1 x = \mathrm{Q}_1$$

where, P_1 and Q_1 are constants or functions of y only. Some examples of this type of differential equation are

$$\frac{dx}{dy} + x = \cos y$$

$$\frac{dx}{dy} + \frac{-2x}{y} = y^2 e^{-y}$$

To solve the first order linear differential equation of the type

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \mathrm{P}y = \mathrm{Q} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Multiply both sides of the equation by a function of x say $g(x)$ to get

$$g(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + \mathrm{P}.(g(x))\, y = \mathrm{Q}\, .\, g(x) \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Choose $g(x)$ in such a way that R.H.S. becomes a derivative of $y \cdot g(x)$.

i.e. $$g(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + \mathrm{P}.g(x)\,y = \frac{d}{dx}[y.g(x)]$$

or $$g(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + \mathrm{P}.g(x)\,y = g(x)\frac{dy}{dx} + y\,g'(x)$$

$\Rightarrow$ $$\mathrm{P}.g(x) = g'(x)$$

or $$\mathrm{P} = \frac{g'(x)}{g(x)}$$

Integrating both sides with respect to x, we get

$$\int \mathrm{P}dx = \int \frac{g'(x)}{g(x)}dx$$

or $$\int \mathrm{P}\cdot dx = \log(g(x))$$

or $$g(x) = e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}$$

On multiplying the equation (1) by $g(x) = e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}$, the L.H.S. becomes the derivative of some function of x and y. This function $g(x) = e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}$ is called *Integrating Factor* (I.F.) of the given differential equation.

Substituting the value of $g(x)$ in equation (2), we get

$$e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}\frac{dy}{dx} + \mathrm{P}\,e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}y = \mathrm{Q}\cdot e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}$$

or $$\frac{d}{dx}\left(y e^{\int \mathrm{P}dx}\right) = \mathrm{Q}\,e^{\int \mathrm{P}dx}$$

Integrating both sides with respect to x, we get

$$y\cdot e^{\int \mathrm{P}dx} = \int\left(\mathrm{Q}.e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}\right)dx$$

or $$y = e^{-\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}\cdot\int\left(\mathrm{Q}.e^{\int \mathrm{P}\,dx}\right)dx + \mathrm{C}$$

which is the general solution of the differential equation.

Steps involved to solve first order linear differential equation:

(i) Write the given differential equation in the form $\frac{dy}{dx} + Py = Q$ where P, Q are constants or functions of x only.

(ii) Find the Integrating Factor (I.F) = $e^{\int P\,dx}$.

(iii) Write the solution of the given differential equation as

$$y \text{ (I.F)} = \int (Q \times \text{I.F})\, dx + C$$

In case, the first order linear differential equation is in the form $\frac{dx}{dy} + P_1 x = Q_1$, where, P_1 and Q_1 are constants or functions of y only. Then I.F = $e^{P_1 dy}$ and the solution of the differential equation is given by

$$x \,.\, \text{(I.F)} = \int (Q_1 \times \text{I.F})\, dy + C$$

Example 14 Find the general solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} - y = \cos x$.

Solution Given differential equation is of the form

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + Py = Q, \text{ where } P = -1 \text{ and } Q = \cos x$$

Therefore $\quad \text{I.F} = e^{\int -1\, dx} = e^{-x}$

Multiplying both sides of equation by I.F, we get

$$e^{-x}\frac{dy}{dx} - e^{-x} y = e^{-x}\cos x$$

or $\quad \frac{dy}{dx}\left(ye^{-x}\right) = e^{-x}\cos x$

On integrating both sides with respect to x, we get

$$ye^{-x} = \int e^{-x}\cos x\, dx + C \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Let $\quad I = \int e^{-x}\cos x\, dx$

$$= \cos x\left(\frac{e^{-x}}{-1}\right) - \int (-\sin x)(-e^{-x})\, dx$$

$$= -\cos x\, e^{-x} - \int \sin x\, e^{-x}\, dx$$

$$= -\cos x\, e^{-x} - \left[\sin x(-e^{-x}) - \int \cos x\,(-e^{-x})\, dx\right]$$

$$= -\cos x\, e^{-x} + \sin x\, e^{-x} - \int \cos x\, e^{-x}\, dx$$

or $$I = -\, e^{-x} \cos x + \sin x\, e^{-x} - I$$

or $$2I = (\sin x - \cos x)\, e^{-x}$$

or $$I = \frac{(\sin x - \cos x)e^{-x}}{2}$$

Substituting the value of I in equation (1), we get

$$ye^{-x} = \left(\frac{\sin x - \cos x}{2}\right)e^{-x} + C$$

or $$y = \left(\frac{\sin x - \cos x}{2}\right) + Ce^{x}$$

which is the general solution of the given differential equation.

Example 15 Find the general solution of the differential equation $x\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = x^2\ (x \neq 0)$.

Solution The given differential equation is

$$x\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = x^2 \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Dividing both sides of equation (1) by x, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{2}{x}y = x$$

which is a linear differential equation of the type $\frac{dy}{dx} + \text{P}y = \text{Q}$, where $\text{P} = \frac{2}{x}$ and $\text{Q} = x$.

So $$\text{I.F} = e^{\int \frac{2}{x} dx} = e^{2 \log x} = e^{\log x^2} = x^2 \quad [as\ e^{\log f(x)} = f(x)]$$

Therefore, solution of the given equation is given by

$$y\,.\,x^2 = \int (x)\,(x^2)\, dx + C = \int x^3 dx + C$$

or $$y = \frac{x^2}{4} + C\,x^{-2}$$

which is the general solution of the given differential equation.

Example 16 Find the general solution of the differential equation $y\,dx - (x + 2y^2)\,dy = 0$.

Solution The given differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{dx}{dy} - \frac{x}{y} = 2y$$

This is a linear differential equation of the type $\frac{dx}{dy} + P_1 x = Q_1$, where $P_1 = -\frac{1}{y}$ and $Q_1 = 2y$. Therefore $I.F = e^{\int -\frac{1}{y} dy} = e^{-\log y} = e^{\log (y)^{-1}} = \frac{1}{y}$

Hence, the solution of the given differential equation is

$$x\frac{1}{y} = \int (2y)\left(\frac{1}{y}\right) dy + C$$

or $$\frac{x}{y} = \int (2dy) + C$$

or $$\frac{x}{y} = 2y + C$$

or $$x = 2y^2 + Cy$$

which is a general solution of the given differential equation.

Example 17 Find the particular solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{dy}{dx} + y\cot x = 2x + x^2 \cot x \ (x \neq 0)$$

given that y = 0 when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

Solution The given equation is a linear differential equation of the type $\frac{dy}{dx} + Py = Q$, where $P = \cot x$ and $Q = 2x + x^2 \cot x$. Therefore

$$I.F = e^{\int \cot x\, dx} = e^{\log \sin x} = \sin x$$

Hence, the solution of the differential equation is given by

$$y \,.\, \sin x = \int (2x + x^2 \cot x) \sin x\, dx + C$$

or $$y \sin x = \int 2x \sin x\, dx + \int x^2 \cos x\, dx + C$$

or $$y \sin x = \sin x \left(\frac{2x^2}{2}\right) - \int \cos x \left(\frac{2x^2}{2}\right) dx + \int x^2 \cos x\, dx + C$$

or $$y \sin x = x^2 \sin x - \int x^2 \cos x\, dx + \int x^2 \cos x\, dx + C$$

or $$y \sin x = x^2 \sin x + C \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Substituting $y = 0$ and $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$ in equation (1), we get

$$0 = \left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) + C$$

or $$C = \frac{-\pi^2}{4}$$

Substituting the value of C in equation (1), we get

$$y \sin x = x^2 \sin x - \frac{\pi^2}{4}$$

or $$y = x^2 - \frac{\pi^2}{4 \sin x} \ (\sin x \neq 0)$$

which is the particular solution of the given differential equation.

Example 18 Find the equation of a curve passing through the point (0, 1). If the slope of the tangent to the curve at any point (x, y) is equal to the sum of the x coordinate (abscissa) and the product of the x coordinate and y coordinate (ordinate) of that point.

Solution We know that the slope of the tangent to the curve is $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

Therefore, $$\frac{dy}{dx} = x + xy$$

or $$\frac{dy}{dx} - xy = x \quad \text{... (1)}$$

This is a linear differential equation of the type $\frac{dy}{dx} + Py = Q$, where $P = -x$ and $Q = x$.

Therefore, $$\text{I.F} = e^{\int -x\, dx} = e^{\frac{-x^2}{2}}$$

Hence, the solution of equation is given by

$$y \cdot e^{\frac{-x^2}{2}} = \int (x)\left(e^{\frac{-x^2}{2}}\right) dx + C \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Let $$I = \int (x)\, e^{\frac{-x^2}{2}} dx$$

Let $\frac{-x^2}{2} = t$, then $-x\, dx = dt$ or $x\, dx = -dt$.

Therefore, $I = -\int e^t dt = -e^t = -e^{\frac{-x^2}{2}}$

Substituting the value of I in equation (2), we get

$$y\, e^{\frac{-x^2}{2}} = -e^{\frac{-x^2}{2}} + C$$

or $$y = -1 + C\, e^{\frac{x^2}{2}} \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Now (3) represents the equation of family of curves. But we are interested in finding a particular member of the family passing through (0, 1). Substituting $x = 0$ and $y = 1$ in equation (3) we get

$$1 = -1 + C \,.\, e^0 \quad \text{or} \quad C = 2$$

Substituting the value of C in equation (3), we get

$$y = -1 + 2\, e^{\frac{x^2}{2}}$$

which is the equation of the required curve.

EXERCISE 9.5

For each of the differential equations given in Exercises 1 to 12, find the general solution:

1. $\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = \sin x$ **2.** $\frac{dy}{dx} + 3y = e^{-2x}$ **3.** $\frac{dy}{dx} + \frac{y}{x} = x^2$

4. $\frac{dy}{dx} + (\sec x)\, y = \tan x \left(0 \le x < \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ **5.** $\cos^2 x \frac{dy}{dx} + y = \tan x \left(0 \le x < \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

6. $x\frac{dy}{dx} + 2y = x^2 \log x$ **7.** $x \log x \frac{dy}{dx} + y = \frac{2}{x} \log x$

8. $(1 + x^2)\, dy + 2xy\, dx = \cot x\, dx \ (x \ne 0)$

9. $x\dfrac{dy}{dx}+y-x+xy\cot x=0\ (x\neq 0)$ **10.** $(x+y)\dfrac{dy}{dx}=1$

11. $y\,dx + (x - y^2)\,dy = 0$ **12.** $(x+3y^2)\dfrac{dy}{dx}=y\ (y>0)$.

For each of the differential equations given in Exercises 13 to 15, find a particular solution satisfying the given condition:

13. $\dfrac{dy}{dx}+2y\tan x=\sin x;\ y=0$ when $x=\dfrac{\pi}{3}$

14. $(1+x^2)\dfrac{dy}{dx}+2xy=\dfrac{1}{1+x^2};\ y=0$ when $x=1$

15. $\dfrac{dy}{dx}-3y\cot x=\sin 2x;\ y=2$ when $x=\dfrac{\pi}{2}$

16. Find the equation of a curve passing through the origin given that the slope of the tangent to the curve at any point (x, y) is equal to the sum of the coordinates of the point.

17. Find the equation of a curve passing through the point (0, 2) given that the sum of the coordinates of any point on the curve exceeds the magnitude of the slope of the tangent to the curve at that point by 5.

18. The Integrating Factor of the differential equation $x\dfrac{dy}{dx}-y=2x^2$ is

(A) e^{-x} (B) e^{-y} (C) $\dfrac{1}{x}$ (D) x

19. The Integrating Factor of the differential equation

$(1-y^2)\dfrac{dx}{dy}+yx = ay(-1<y<1)$ is

(A) $\dfrac{1}{y^2-1}$ (B) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{y^2-1}}$ (C) $\dfrac{1}{1-y^2}$ (D) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-y^2}}$

Miscellaneous Examples

Example 19 Verify that the function $y = c_1\, e^{ax}\cos bx + c_2\, e^{ax}\sin bx$, where c_1, c_2 are arbitrary constants is a solution of the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}-2a\frac{dy}{dx}+\left(a^2+b^2\right)y=0$$

Solution The given function is

$$y = e^{ax}\,[c_1 \cos bx + c_2 \sin bx] \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Differentiating both sides of equation (1) with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{ax}\left[-bc_1 \sin bx + bc_2 \cos bx\right] + \left[c_1 \cos bx + c_2 \sin bx\right]e^{ax} \cdot a$$

or $$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{ax}[(bc_2 + ac_1)\cos bx + (ac_2 - bc_1)\sin bx] \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Differentiating both sides of equation (2) with respect to x, we get

$$\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = e^{ax}[(bc_2 + ac_1)(-b\sin bx) + (ac_2 - bc_1)(b\cos bx)]$$

$$+ [(bc_2 + ac_1)\cos bx + (ac_2 - bc_1)\sin bx]\, e^{ax}.a$$

$$= e^{ax}[(a^2c_2 - 2abc_1 - b^2c_2)\sin bx + (a^2c_1 + 2abc_2 - b^2c_1)\cos bx]$$

Substituting the values of $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}, \frac{dy}{dx}$ and y in the given differential equation, we get

$$\text{L.H.S.} = e^{ax}[a^2c_2 - 2abc_1 - b^2c_2)\sin bx + (a^2c_1 + 2abc_2 - b^2c_1)\cos bx]$$

$$-2ae^{ax}[(bc_2 + ac_1)\cos bx + (ac_2 - bc_1)\sin bx]$$

$$+(a^2 + b^2)e^{ax}[c_1 \cos bx + c_2 \sin bx]$$

$$= e^{ax}\begin{bmatrix}\left(a^2c_2 - 2abc_1 - b^2c_2 - 2a^2c_2 + 2abc_1 + a^2c_2 + b^2c_2\right)\sin bx \\ +(a^2c_1 + 2abc_2 - b^2c_1 - 2abc_2 - 2a^2c_1 + a^2c_1 + b^2c_1)\cos bx\end{bmatrix}$$

$$= e^{ax}[0 \times \sin bx + 0\cos bx] = e^{ax} \times 0 = 0 = \text{R.H.S.}$$

Hence, the given function is a solution of the given differential equation.

Example 20 Find the particular solution of the differential equation $\log\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = 3x + 4y$ given that $y = 0$ when $x = 0$.

Solution The given differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{(3x + 4y)}$$

or $$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{3x} \cdot e^{4y} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Separating the variables, we get

$$\frac{dy}{e^{4y}} = e^{3x}\ dx$$

Therefore $$\int e^{-4y} dy = \int e^{3x} dx$$

or $$\frac{e^{-4y}}{-4} = \frac{e^{3x}}{3} + C$$

or $$4\ e^{3x} + 3\ e^{-4y} + 12\ C = 0 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Substituting $x = 0$ and $y = 0$ in (2), we get

$$4 + 3 + 12\ C = 0 \text{ or } C = \frac{-7}{12}$$

Substituting the value of C in equation (2), we get

$$4\,e^{3x} + 3\,e^{-4y} - 7 = 0,$$

which is a particular solution of the given differential equation.

Example 21 Solve the differential equation

$$(x\ dy - y\ dx)\ y \sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = (y\ dx + x\ dy)\ x \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right).$$

Solution The given differential equation can be written as

$$\left[x\,y \sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) - x^2 \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right] dy = \left[xy \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) + y^2 \sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right] dx$$

or $$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{xy \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) + y^2 \sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)}{xy \sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) - x^2 \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)}$$

Dividing numerator and denominator on RHS by x^2, we get

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{\frac{y}{x} \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) + \left(\frac{y^2}{x^2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)}{\frac{y}{x} \sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) - \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)} \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Clearly, equation (1) is a homogeneous differential equation of the form $\frac{dy}{dx} = g\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$.

To solve it, we make the substitution

$$y = vx \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

or $$\frac{dy}{dx} = v + x\frac{dv}{dx}$$

or $$v + x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{v\cos v + v^2 \sin v}{v\sin v - \cos v} \qquad \text{(using (1) and (2))}$$

or $$x\frac{dv}{dx} = \frac{2v\cos v}{v\sin v - \cos v}$$

or $$\left(\frac{v\sin v - \cos v}{v\cos v}\right)dv = \frac{2\,dx}{x}$$

Therefore $$\int\left(\frac{v\sin v - \cos v}{v\cos v}\right)dv = 2\int\frac{1}{x}\,dx$$

or $$\int \tan v\,dv - \int\frac{1}{v}\,dv = 2\int\frac{1}{x}\,dx$$

or $$\log|\sec v| - \log|v| = 2\log|x| + \log|C_1|$$

or $$\log\left|\frac{\sec v}{v\,x^2}\right| = \log|C_1|$$

or $$\frac{\sec v}{v\,x^2} = \pm\, C_1 \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Replacing v by $\frac{y}{x}$ in equation (3), we get

$$\frac{\sec\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)}{\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)(x^2)} = C \text{ where, } C = \pm\, C_1$$

or $$\sec\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = C\,xy$$

which is the general solution of the given differential equation.

Example 22 Solve the differential equation

$$(\tan^{-1}y - x)\,dy = (1 + y^2)\,dx.$$

Solution The given differential equation can be written as

$$\frac{dx}{dy} + \frac{x}{1+y^2} = \frac{\tan^{-1}y}{1+y^2} \qquad \ldots (1)$$

Now (1) is a linear differential equation of the form $\frac{dx}{dy} + P_1\,x = Q_1$,

where, $P_1 = \frac{1}{1+y^2}$ and $Q_1 = \frac{\tan^{-1}y}{1+y^2}$.

Therefore, $\text{I.F} = e^{\int \frac{1}{1+y^2} dy} = e^{\tan^{-1}y}$

Thus, the solution of the given differential equation is

$$x e^{\tan^{-1}y} = \int \left(\frac{\tan^{-1}y}{1+y^2}\right) e^{\tan^{-1}y}\,dy + C \qquad \ldots (2)$$

Let $$I = \int \left(\frac{\tan^{-1}y}{1+y^2}\right) e^{\tan^{-1}y}\,dy$$

Substituting $\tan^{-1} y = t$ so that $\left(\frac{1}{1+y^2}\right)dy = dt$, we get

$$I = \int t\,e^t dt = t\,e^t - \int 1\,.\,e^t\,dt = t\,e^t - e^t = e^t\,(t - 1)$$

or $$I = e^{\tan^{-1}y}(\tan^{-1}y - 1)$$

Substituting the value of I in equation (2), we get

$$x\,.\,e^{\tan^{-1}y} = e^{\tan^{-1}y}(\tan^{-1}y - 1) + C$$

or $$x = (\tan^{-1}y - 1) + C\,e^{-\tan^{-1}y}$$

which is the general solution of the given differential equation.

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 9

1. For each of the differential equations given below, indicate its order and degree (if defined).

(i) $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}+5x\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2-6y=\log x$ (ii) $\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^3-4\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right)^2+7y=\sin x$

(iii) $\frac{d^4y}{dx^4}-\sin\left(\frac{d^3y}{dx^3}\right)=0$

2. For each of the exercises given below, verify that the given function (implicit or explicit) is a solution of the corresponding differential equation.

(i) $xy = a\,e^x + b\,e^{-x} + x^2$: $x\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}+2\frac{dy}{dx}-xy+x^2-2=0$

(ii) $y = e^x\,(a\cos x + b\sin x)$: $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}-2\frac{dy}{dx}+2y=0$

(iii) $y = x\sin 3x$: $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}+9y-6\cos 3x=0$

(iv) $x^2 = 2y^2\log y$: $(x^2+y^2)\frac{dy}{dx}-xy=0$

3. Prove that $x^2 - y^2 = c\,(x^2 + y^2)^2$ is the general solution of differential equation $(x^3 - 3x\,y^2)\,dx = (y^3 - 3x^2y)\,dy$, where c is a parameter.

4. Find the general solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx}+\sqrt{\frac{1-y^2}{1-x^2}}=0$.

5. Show that the general solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx}+\frac{y^2+y+1}{x^2+x+1}=0$ is given by $(x + y + 1) = A\,(1 - x - y - 2xy)$, where A is parameter.

6. Find the equation of the curve passing through the point $\left(0,\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ whose differential equation is $\sin x\cos y\,dx + \cos x\sin y\,dy = 0$.

7. Find the particular solution of the differential equation $(1 + e^{2x})\,dy + (1 + y^2)\,e^x\,dx = 0$, given that $y = 1$ when $x = 0$.

8. Solve the differential equation $y\,e^{\frac{x}{y}}dx=\left(x\,e^{\frac{x}{y}}+y^2\right)dy\ (y\neq 0)$.

9. Find a particular solution of the differential equation $(x - y)(dx + dy) = dx - dy$, given that $y = -1$, when $x = 0$. (Hint: put $x - y = t$)

10. Solve the differential equation $\left[\frac{e^{-2\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}} - \frac{y}{\sqrt{x}}\right]\frac{dx}{dy} = 1\ (x \neq 0)$.

11. Find a particular solution of the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} + y\cot x = 4x \operatorname{cosec} x$ $(x \neq 0)$, given that $y = 0$ when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

12. Find a particular solution of the differential equation $(x+1)\frac{dy}{dx} = 2e^{-y} - 1$, given that $y = 0$ when $x = 0$.

13. The general solution of the differential equation $\frac{y\,dx - x\,dy}{y} = 0$ is

(A) $xy = C$ (B) $x = Cy^2$ (C) $y = Cx$ (D) $y = Cx^2$

14. The general solution of a differential equation of the type $\frac{dx}{dy} + P_1 x = Q_1$ is

(A) $y\, e^{\int P_1 dy} = \int \left(Q_1 e^{\int P_1 dy}\right) dy + C$

(B) $y \,.\, e^{\int P_1 dx} = \int \left(Q_1 e^{\int P_1 dx}\right) dx + C$

(C) $x\, e^{\int P_1 dy} = \int \left(Q_1 e^{\int P_1 dy}\right) dy + C$

(D) $x\, e^{\int P_1 dx} = \int \left(Q_1 e^{\int P_1 dx}\right) dx + C$

15. The general solution of the differential equation $e^x dy + (y\, e^x + 2x)\, dx = 0$ is

(A) $x\, e^y + x^2 = C$ (B) $x\, e^y + y^2 = C$

(C) $y\, e^x + x^2 = C$ (D) $y\, e^y + x^2 = C$

Summary

- An equation involving derivatives of the dependent variable with respect to independent variable (variables) is known as a differential equation.
- Order of a differential equation is the order of the highest order derivative occurring in the differential equation.
- Degree of a differential equation is defined if it is a polynomial equation in its derivatives.
- Degree (when defined) of a differential equation is the highest power (positive integer only) of the highest order derivative in it.
- A function which satisfies the given differential equation is called its solution. The solution which contains as many arbitrary constants as the order of the differential equation is called a general solution and the solution free from arbitrary constants is called particular solution.
- Variable separable method is used to solve such an equation in which variables can be separated completely i.e. terms containing y should remain with dy and terms containing x should remain with dx.
- A differential equation which can be expressed in the form $\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x, y)$ or $\frac{dx}{dy} = g(x, y)$ where, $f(x, y)$ and $g(x, y)$ are homogenous functions of degree zero is called a homogeneous differential equation.
- A differential equation of the form $\frac{dy}{dx} + \mathrm{P}y = \mathrm{Q}$, where P and Q are constants or functions of x only is called a first order linear differential equation.

Historical Note

One of the principal languages of Science is that of differential equations. Interestingly, the date of birth of differential equations is taken to be November, 11,1675, when Gottfried Wilthelm Freiherr Leibnitz (1646 - 1716) first put in black and white the identity $\int y\, dy = \frac{1}{2} y^2$, thereby introducing both the symbols $\int$ and dy. Leibnitz was actually interested in the problem of finding a curve whose tangents were prescribed. This led him to discover the '*method of separation of variables*' 1691. A year later he formulated the '*method of solving the homogeneous* *differential equations of the first order*'. He went further in a very short time to the discovery of the '*method of solving a linear differential equation of the first-order*'. How surprising is it that all these methods came from a single man and that too within 25 years of the birth of differential equations!

In the old days, what we now call the 'solution' of a differential equation, was used to be referred to as 'integral' of the differential equation, the word being coined by James Bernoulli (1654 - 1705) in 1690. The word 'solution was first used by Joseph Louis Lagrange (1736 - 1813) in 1774, which was almost hundred years since the birth of differential equations. It was Jules Henri Poincare (1854 - 1912) who strongly advocated the use of the word 'solution' and thus the word 'solution' has found its deserved place in modern terminology. The name of the '*method of separation of variables*' is due to John Bernoulli (1667 - 1748), a younger brother of James Bernoulli.

Application to geometric problems were also considered. It was again John Bernoulli who first brought into light the intricate nature of differential equations. In a letter to Leibnitz, dated May 20, 1715, he revealed the solutions of the differential equation

$$x^2 y'' = 2y,$$

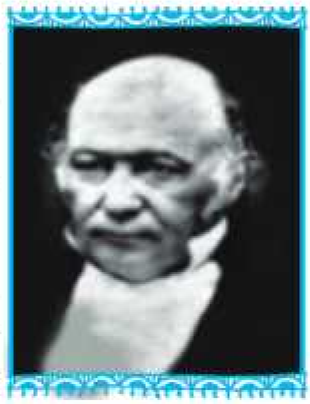
which led to three types of curves, viz., parabolas, hyperbolas and a class of cubic curves. This shows how varied the solutions of such innocent looking differential equation can be. From the second half of the twentieth century attention has been drawn to the investigation of this complicated nature of the solutions of differential equations, under the heading '*qualitative analysis of differential equations*'. Now-a-days, this has acquired prime importance being absolutely necessary in almost all investigations.

Chapter 10

VECTOR ALGEBRA

❖ *In most sciences one generation tears down what another has built and what one has established another undoes. In Mathematics alone each generation builds a new story to the old structure. – HERMAN HANKEL* ❖

10.1 Introduction



W.R. Hamilton
(1805-1865)

In our day to day life, we come across many queries such as – What is your height? How should a football player hit the ball to give a pass to another player of his team? Observe that a possible answer to the first query may be 1.6 meters, a quantity that involves only one value (magnitude) which is a real number. Such quantities are called *scalars*. However, an answer to the second query is a quantity (called force) which involves muscular strength (magnitude) and direction (in which another player is positioned). Such quantities are called *vectors*. In mathematics, physics and engineering, we frequently come across with both types of quantities, namely, scalar quantities such as length, mass, time, distance, speed, area, volume, temperature, work, money, voltage, density, resistance etc. and vector quantities like displacement, velocity, acceleration, force, weight, momentum, electric field intensity etc.

In this chapter, we will study some of the basic concepts about vectors, various operations on vectors, and their algebraic and geometric properties. These two type of properties, when considered together give a full realisation to the concept of vectors, and lead to their vital applicability in various areas as mentioned above.

10.2 Some Basic Concepts

Let '*l*' be any straight line in plane or three dimensional space. This line can be given two directions by means of arrowheads. A line with one of these directions prescribed is called a *directed line* (Fig 10.1 (i), (ii)).

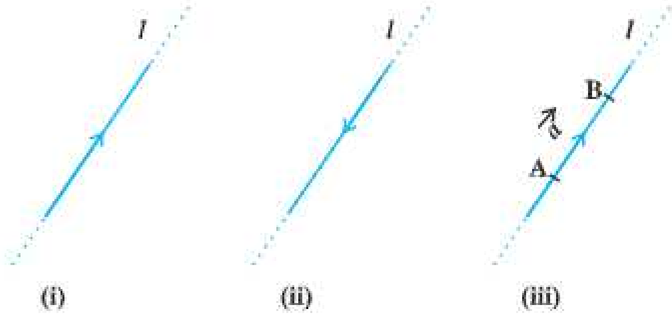


Fig 10.1

Now observe that if we restrict the line l to the line segment AB, then a magnitude is prescribed on the line l with one of the two directions, so that we obtain a *directed line segment* (Fig 10.1(iii)). Thus, a directed line segment has magnitude as well as direction.

Definition 1 A quantity that has magnitude as well as direction is called a vector.

Notice that a directed line segment is a vector (Fig 10.1(iii)), denoted as $\overrightarrow{AB}$ or simply as $\vec{a}$, and read as 'vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$' or 'vector $\vec{a}$'.

The point A from where the vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$ starts is called its *initial point*, and the point B where it ends is called its *terminal point*. The distance between initial and terminal points of a vector is called the *magnitude* (or length) of the vector, denoted as $|\overrightarrow{AB}|$, or $|\vec{a}|$, or a. The arrow indicates the direction of the vector.

Note Since the length is never negative, the notation $|\vec{a}| < 0$ has no meaning.

Position Vector

From Class XI, recall the three dimensional right handed rectangular coordinate system (Fig 10.2(i)). Consider a point P in space, having coordinates (x, y, z) with respect to the origin O(0, 0, 0). Then, the vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ having O and P as its initial and terminal points, respectively, is called the *position vector* of the point P with respect to O. Using distance formula (from Class XI), the magnitude of $\overrightarrow{OP}$ (or $\vec{r}$) is given by

$$|\overrightarrow{OP}| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$$

In practice, the position vectors of points A, B, C, etc., with respect to the origin O are denoted by $\vec{a}$, $\vec{b}$, $\vec{c}$, etc., respectively (Fig 10.2 (ii)).

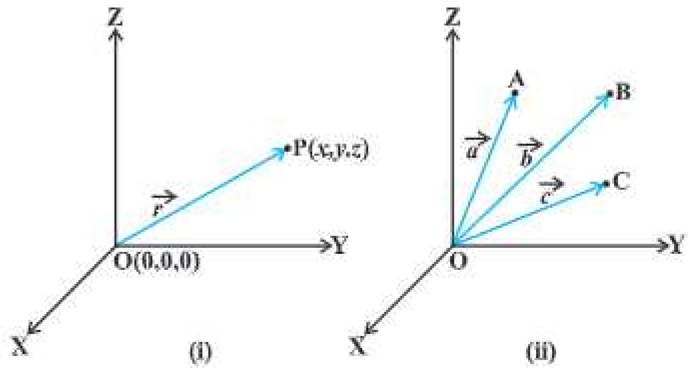


Fig 10.2

Direction Cosines

Consider the position vector $\overline{OP}$ (or $\vec{r}$) of a point P(x, y, z) as in Fig 10.3. The angles α, β, γ made by the vector $\vec{r}$ with the positive directions of x, y and z-axes respectively, are called its *direction angles*. The cosine values of these angles, i.e., cos α, cos β and cos γ are called *direction cosines* of the vector $\vec{r}$, and usually denoted by l, m and n, respectively.

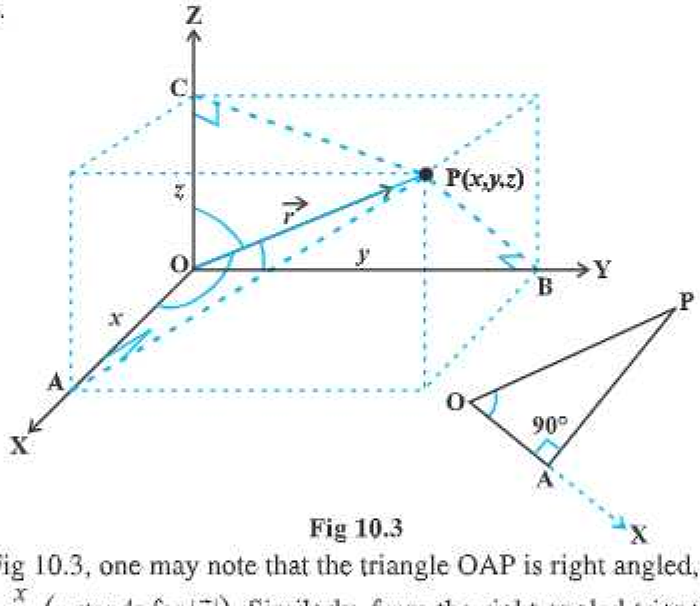


Fig 10.3

From Fig 10.3, one may note that the triangle OAP is right angled, and in it, we have $\cos\alpha = \frac{x}{r}$ (r stands for $|\vec{r}|$). Similarly, from the right angled triangles OBP and OCP, we may write $\cos\beta = \frac{y}{r}$ and $\cos\gamma = \frac{z}{r}$. Thus, the coordinates of the point P may also be expressed as (lr, mr,nr). The numbers lr, mr and nr, proportional to the direction cosines are called as *direction ratios* of vector $\vec{r}$, and denoted as a, b and c, respectively.

Note One may note that $l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1$ but $a^2 + b^2 + c^2 \neq 1$, in general.

10.3 Types of Vectors

Zero Vector A vector whose initial and terminal points coincide, is called a zero vector (or null vector), and denoted as $\vec{0}$. Zero vector can not be assigned a definite direction as it has zero magnitude. Or, alternatively otherwise, it may be regarded as having any direction. The vectors $\overrightarrow{AA}, \overrightarrow{BB}$ represent the zero vector,

Unit Vector A vector whose magnitude is unity (i.e., 1 unit) is called a unit vector. The unit vector in the direction of a given vector $\vec{a}$ is denoted by $\hat{a}$.

Coinitial Vectors Two or more vectors having the same initial point are called coinitial vectors.

Collinear Vectors Two or more vectors are said to be collinear if they are parallel to the same line, irrespective of their magnitudes and directions.

Equal Vectors Two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are said to be equal, if they have the same magnitude and direction regardless of the positions of their initial points, and written as $\vec{a} = \vec{b}$.

Negative of a Vector A vector whose magnitude is the same as that of a given vector (say, $\overrightarrow{AB}$), but direction is opposite to that of it, is called *negative* of the given vector. For example, vector $\overrightarrow{BA}$ is negative of the vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$, and written as $\overrightarrow{BA} = -\overrightarrow{AB}$.

Remark The vectors defined above are such that any of them may be subject to its parallel displacement without changing its magnitude and direction. Such vectors are called *free vectors*. Throughout this chapter, we will be dealing with free vectors only.

Example 1 Represent graphically a displacement of 40 km, 30° west of south.

Solution The vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represents the required displacement (Fig 10.4).

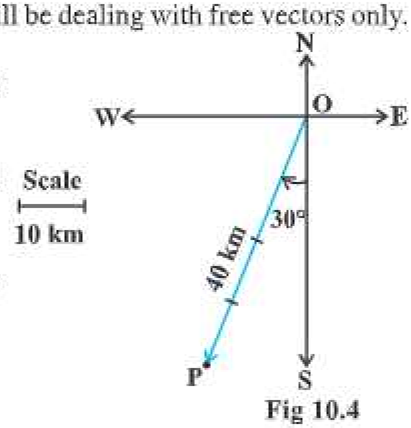


Fig 10.4

Example 2 Classify the following measures as scalars and vectors.

(i) 5 seconds

(ii) 1000 cm³

(iii) 10 Newton (iv) 30 km/hr (v) 10 g/cm^3

(vi) 20 m/s towards north

Solution

(i) Time-scalar (ii) Volume-scalar (iii) Force-vector

(iv) Speed-scalar (v) Density-scalar (vi) Velocity-vector

Example 3 In Fig 10.5, which of the vectors are:

(i) Collinear (ii) Equal (iii) Coinitial

Solution

(i) Collinear vectors : $\vec{a}$, $\vec{c}$ and $\vec{d}$.

(ii) Equal vectors : $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{c}$.

(iii) Coinitial vectors : $\vec{b}$, $\vec{c}$ and $\vec{d}$.

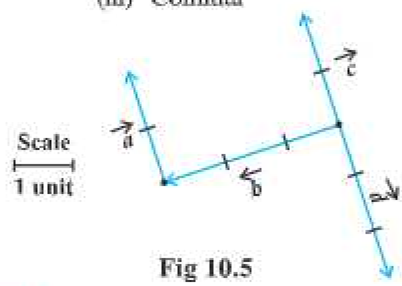


Fig 10.5

EXERCISE 10.1

1. Represent graphically a displacement of 40 km, 30° east of north.
2. Classify the following measures as scalars and vectors.

   (i) 10 kg (ii) 2 meters north-west (iii) 40°

   (iv) 40 watt (v) 10^{-19} coulomb (vi) 20 m/s^2
3. Classify the following as scalar and vector quantities.

   (i) time period (ii) distance (iii) force

   (iv) velocity (v) work done
4. In Fig 10.6 (a square), identify the following vectors.

   (i) Coinitial (ii) Equal

   (iii) Collinear but not equal

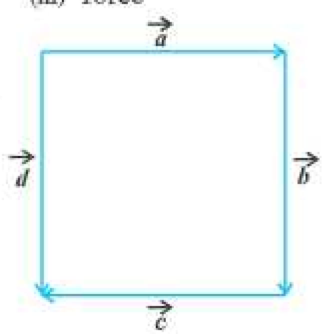


Fig 10.6

5. Answer the following as true or false.

   (i) $\vec{a}$ and $-\vec{a}$ are collinear.

   (ii) Two collinear vectors are always equal in magnitude.

   (iii) Two vectors having same magnitude are collinear.

   (iv) Two collinear vectors having the same magnitude are equal.

10.4 Addition of Vectors

A vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$ simply means the displacement from a point A to the point B. Now consider a situation that a girl moves from A to B and then from B to C (Fig 10.7). The net displacement made by the girl from point A to the point C, is given by the vector $\overrightarrow{AC}$ and expressed as

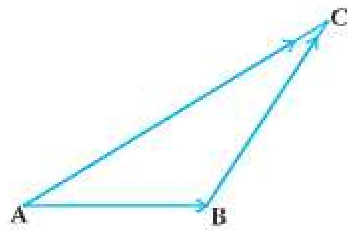


Fig 10.7

$$\overrightarrow{AC} = \overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC}$$

This is known as the *triangle law of vector addition.*

In general, if we have two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ (Fig 10.8 (i)), then to add them, they are positioned so that the initial point of one coincides with the terminal point of the other (Fig 10.8(ii)).

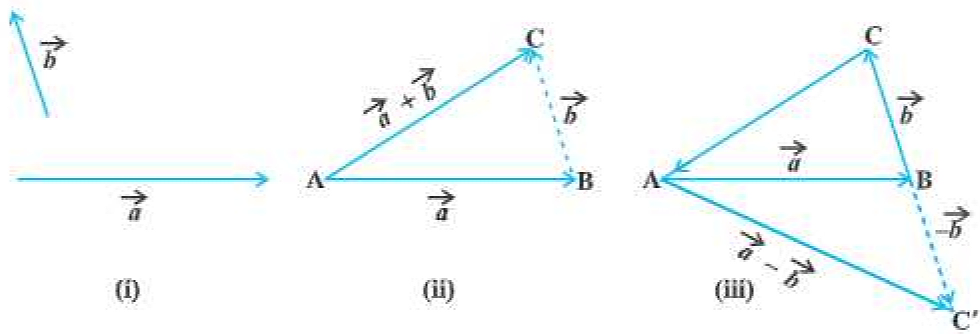


Fig 10.8

For example, in Fig 10.8 (ii), we have shifted vector $\vec{b}$ without changing its magnitude and direction, so that it's initial point coincides with the terminal point of $\vec{a}$. Then, the vector $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$, represented by the third side AC of the triangle ABC, gives us the sum (or resultant) of the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ i.e., in triangle ABC (Fig 10.8 (ii)), we have

$$\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC} = \overrightarrow{AC}$$

Now again, since $\overrightarrow{AC} = -\overrightarrow{CA}$, from the above equation, we have

$$\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC} + \overrightarrow{CA} = \overrightarrow{AA} = \vec{0}$$

This means that when the sides of a triangle are taken in order, it leads to zero resultant as the initial and terminal points get coincided (Fig 10.8(iii)).

Now, construct a vector $\overrightarrow{BC'}$ so that its magnitude is same as the vector $\overrightarrow{BC}$, but the direction opposite to that of it (Fig 10.8 (iii)), i.e.,

$$\overrightarrow{BC'} = -\overrightarrow{BC}$$

Then, on applying triangle law from the Fig 10.8 (iii), we have

$$\overrightarrow{AC'} = \overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC'} = \overrightarrow{AB} + (-\overrightarrow{BC}) = \vec{a} - \vec{b}$$

The vector $\overrightarrow{AC'}$ is said to represent the *difference of* $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$.

Now, consider a boat in a river going from one bank of the river to the other in a direction perpendicular to the flow of the river. Then, it is acted upon by two velocity vectors–one is the velocity imparted to the boat by its engine and other one is the velocity of the flow of river water. Under the simultaneous influence of these two velocities, the boat in actual starts travelling with a different velocity. To have a precise idea about the effective speed and direction (i.e., the resultant velocity) of the boat, we have the following law of vector addition.

If we have two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ represented by the two adjacent sides of a parallelogram in magnitude and direction (Fig 10.9), then their sum $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$ is represented in magnitude and direction by the diagonal of the parallelogram through their common point. This is known as the *parallelogram law of vector addition.*

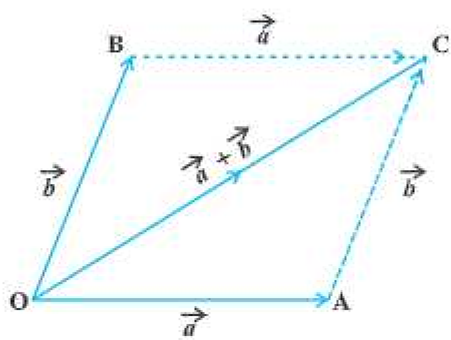


Fig 10.9

Note From Fig 10.9, using the triangle law, one may note that

$$\overrightarrow{OA} + \overrightarrow{AC} = \overrightarrow{OC}$$

or $$\overrightarrow{OA} + \overrightarrow{OB} = \overrightarrow{OC} \quad (\text{since } \overrightarrow{AC} = \overrightarrow{OB})$$

which is parallelogram law. Thus, we may say that the two laws of vector addition are equivalent to each other.

Properties of vector addition

Property 1 For any two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$,

$$\vec{a} + \vec{b} = \vec{b} + \vec{a} \quad \text{(Commutative property)}$$

Proof Consider the parallelogram ABCD (Fig 10.10). Let $\overrightarrow{AB} = \vec{a}$ and $\overrightarrow{BC} = \vec{b}$, then using the triangle law, from triangle ABC, we have

$$\overrightarrow{AC} = \vec{a} + \vec{b}$$

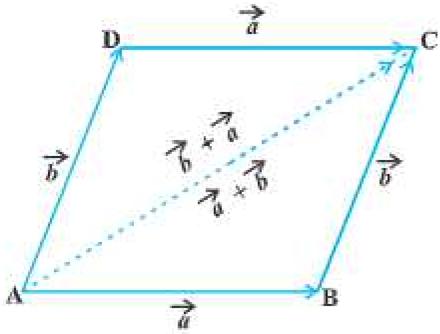


Fig 10.10

Now, since the opposite sides of a parallelogram are equal and parallel, from Fig 10.10, we have, $\overrightarrow{AD} = \overrightarrow{BC} = \vec{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{DC} = \overrightarrow{AB} = \vec{a}$. Again using triangle law, from triangle ADC, we have

$$\overrightarrow{AC} = \overrightarrow{AD} + \overrightarrow{DC} = \vec{b} + \vec{a}$$

Hence $\qquad \vec{a} + \vec{b} = \vec{b} + \vec{a}$

Property 2 For any three vectors a, b and c

$$(\vec{a} + \vec{b}) + \vec{c} = \vec{a} + (\vec{b} + \vec{c}) \qquad \text{(Associative property)}$$

Proof Let the vectors $\vec{a}, \vec{b}$ and $\vec{c}$ be represented by $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, $\overrightarrow{QR}$ and $\overrightarrow{RS}$, respectively, as shown in Fig 10.11(i) and (ii).

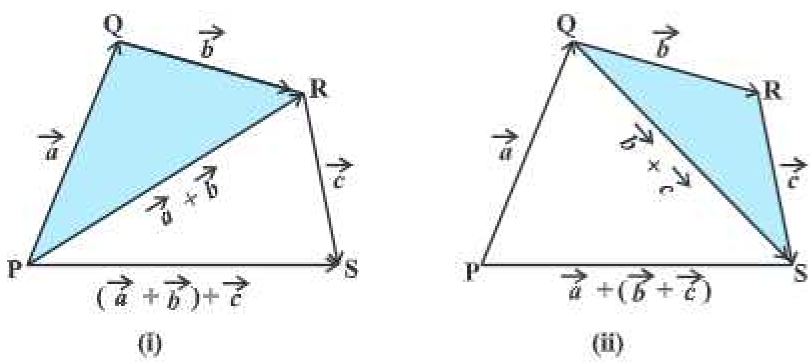


Fig 10.11

Then $\qquad \vec{a} + \vec{b} = \overrightarrow{PQ} + \overrightarrow{QR} = \overrightarrow{PR}$

and $\qquad \vec{b} + \vec{c} = \overrightarrow{QR} + \overrightarrow{RS} = \overrightarrow{QS}$

So $\qquad (\vec{a} + \vec{b}) + \vec{c} = \overrightarrow{PR} + \overrightarrow{RS} = \overrightarrow{PS}$

and $\vec{a} + (\vec{b} + \vec{c}) = \overrightarrow{PQ} + \overrightarrow{QS} = \overrightarrow{PS}$

Hence $(\vec{a} + \vec{b}) + \vec{c} = \vec{a} + (\vec{b} + \vec{c})$

Remark The associative property of vector addition enables us to write the sum of three vectors $\vec{a}, \vec{b}, \vec{c}$ as $\vec{a} + \vec{b} + \vec{c}$ without using brackets.

Note that for any vector a, we have

$$\vec{a} + \vec{0} = \vec{0} + \vec{a} = \vec{a}$$

Here, the zero vector $\vec{0}$ is called the *additive identity* for the vector addition.

10.5 Multiplication of a Vector by a Scalar

Let $\vec{a}$ be a given vector and λ a scalar. Then the product of the vector $\vec{a}$ by the scalar λ, denoted as $\lambda\vec{a}$, is called the multiplication of vector $\vec{a}$ by the scalar λ. Note that, $\lambda\vec{a}$ is also a vector, collinear to the vector $\vec{a}$. The vector $\lambda\vec{a}$ has the direction same (or opposite) to that of vector $\vec{a}$ according as the value of λ is positive (or negative). Also, the magnitude of vector $\lambda\vec{a}$ is $|\lambda|$ times the magnitude of the vector $\vec{a}$, i.e.,

$$|\lambda\vec{a}| = |\lambda||\vec{a}|$$

A geometric visualisation of multiplication of a vector by a scalar is given in Fig 10.12.

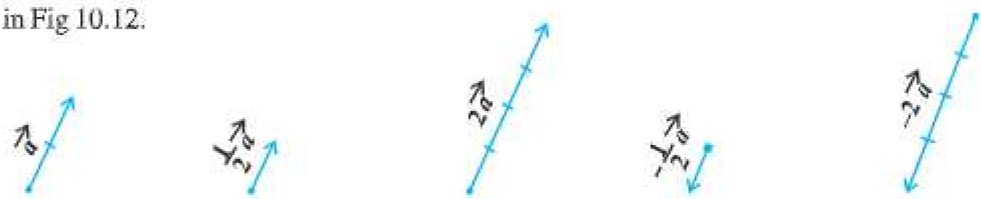


Fig 10.12

When $\lambda = -1$, then $\lambda\vec{a} = -\vec{a}$, which is a vector having magnitude equal to the magnitude of $\vec{a}$ and direction opposite to that of the direction of $\vec{a}$. The vector $-\vec{a}$ is called the *negative* (or *additive inverse*) *of vector* $\vec{a}$ and we always have

$$\vec{a} + (-\vec{a}) = (-\vec{a}) + \vec{a} = \vec{0}$$

Also, if $\lambda = \frac{1}{|\vec{a}|}$, provided $\vec{a} \neq 0$ i.e. $\vec{a}$ is not a null vector, then

$$|\lambda\vec{a}| = |\lambda||\vec{a}| = \frac{1}{|\vec{a}|}|\vec{a}| = 1$$

So, $\lambda \vec{a}$ *represents the unit vector in the direction of* $\vec{a}$. We write it as

$$\hat{a} = \frac{1}{|\vec{a}|}\vec{a}$$

Note For any scalar k, $k\vec{0} = \vec{0}$.

10.5.1 *Components of a vector*

Let us take the points A(1, 0, 0), B(0, 1, 0) and C(0, 0, 1) on the x-axis, y-axis and z-axis, respectively. Then, clearly

$$|\overrightarrow{OA}| = 1, \ |\overrightarrow{OB}| = 1 \text{ and } |\overrightarrow{OC}| = 1$$

The vectors $\overrightarrow{OA}$, $\overrightarrow{OB}$ and $\overrightarrow{OC}$, each having magnitude 1, are called *unit vectors along the axes* OX, OY and OZ, respectively, and denoted by $\hat{i}, \hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$, respectively (Fig 10.13).

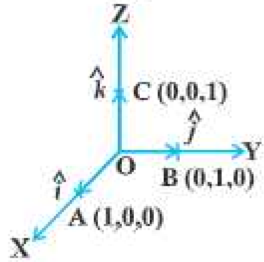


Fig 10.13

Now, consider the position vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ of a point P(x, y, z) as in Fig 10.14. Let P_1 be the foot of the perpendicular from P on the plane XOY.

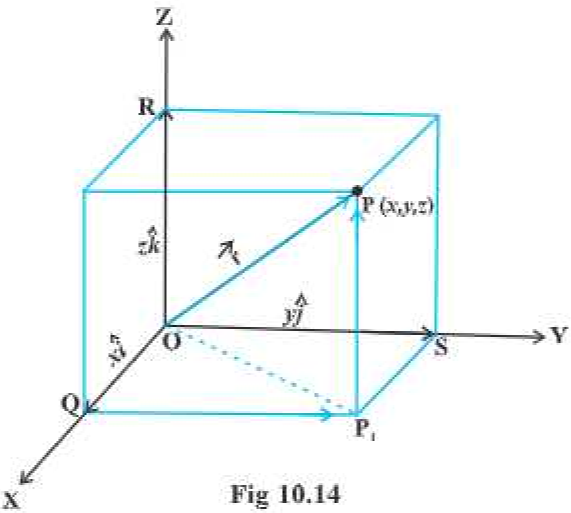


Fig 10.14

We, thus, see that P_1P is parallel to z-axis. As $\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$ are the unit vectors along the x, y and z-axes, respectively, and by the definition of the coordinates of P, we have $\overrightarrow{P_1P} = \overrightarrow{OR} = z\hat{k}$. Similarly, $\overrightarrow{QP_1} = \overrightarrow{OS} = y\hat{j}$ and $\overrightarrow{OQ} = x\hat{i}$.

Therefore, it follows that $\overrightarrow{OP_1} = \overrightarrow{OQ} + \overrightarrow{QP_1} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j}$

and $\overrightarrow{OP} = \overrightarrow{OP_1} + \overrightarrow{P_1P} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k}$

Hence, the position vector of P with reference to O is given by

$$\overrightarrow{OP} \text{ (or } \vec{r}) = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k}$$

This form of any vector is called its *component form*. Here, x, y and z are called as the *scalar components* of $\vec{r}$, and $x\hat{i}$, $y\hat{j}$ and $z\hat{k}$ are called the *vector components* of $\vec{r}$ along the respective axes. Sometimes x, y and z are also termed as *rectangular components*.

The length of any vector $\vec{r} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k}$, is readily determined by applying the Pythagoras theorem twice. We note that in the right angle triangle OQP_1 (Fig 10.14)

$$|\overrightarrow{OP_1}| = \sqrt{|\overrightarrow{OQ}|^2 + |\overrightarrow{QP_1}|^2} = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2},$$

and in the right angle triangle OP_1P, we have

$$\overrightarrow{OP} = \sqrt{|\overrightarrow{OP_1}|^2 + |\overrightarrow{P_1P}|^2} = \sqrt{(x^2 + y^2) + z^2}$$

Hence, the length of any vector $\vec{r} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k}$ is given by

$$|\vec{r}| = |x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k}| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$$

If $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are any two vectors given in the component form $a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$ and $b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}$, respectively, then

(i) the sum (or resultant) of the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ is given by

$$\vec{a} + \vec{b} = (a_1 + b_1)\hat{i} + (a_2 + b_2)\hat{j} + (a_3 + b_3)\hat{k}$$

(ii) the difference of the vector $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ is given by

$$\vec{a} - \vec{b} = (a_1 - b_1)\hat{i} + (a_2 - b_2)\hat{j} + (a_3 - b_3)\hat{k}$$

(iii) the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are equal if and only if

$$a_1 = b_1,\ a_2 = b_2 \quad \text{and} \quad a_3 = b_3$$

(iv) the multiplication of vector $\vec{a}$ by any scalar λ is given by

$$\lambda\vec{a} = (\lambda a_1)\hat{i} + (\lambda a_2)\hat{j} + (\lambda a_3)\hat{k}$$

The addition of vectors and the multiplication of a vector by a scalar together give the following distributive laws:

Let $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ be any two vectors, and k and m be any scalars. Then

(i) $k\vec{a} + m\vec{a} = (k + m)\vec{a}$

(ii) $k(m\vec{a}) = (km)\vec{a}$

(iii) $k(\vec{a} + \vec{b}) = k\vec{a} + k\vec{b}$

Remarks

(i) One may observe that whatever be the value of λ, the vector $\lambda\vec{a}$ is always collinear to the vector $\vec{a}$. In fact, two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are collinear if and only if there exists a nonzero scalar λ such that $\vec{b} = \lambda\vec{a}$. If the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are given in the component form, i.e. $\vec{a} = a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}$, then the two vectors are collinear if and only if

$$b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k} = \lambda(a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k})$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \quad b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k} = (\lambda a_1)\hat{i} + (\lambda a_2)\hat{j} + (\lambda a_3)\hat{k}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \quad b_1 = \lambda a_1,\ b_2 = \lambda a_2,\ b_3 = \lambda a_3$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \quad \frac{b_1}{a_1} = \frac{b_2}{a_2} = \frac{b_3}{a_3} = \lambda$$

(ii) If $\vec{a} = a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$, then a_1, a_2, a_3 are also called direction ratios of $\vec{a}$.

(iii) In case if it is given that l, m, n are direction cosines of a vector, then $l\hat{i} + m\hat{j} + n\hat{k}$ $= (\cos\alpha)\hat{i} + (\cos\beta)\hat{j} + (\cos\gamma)\hat{k}$ is the unit vector in the direction of that vector, where α, β and γ are the angles which the vector makes with x, y and z axes respectively.

Example 4 Find the values of x, y and z so that the vectors $\vec{a} = x\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + z\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = 2\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ are equal.

Solution Note that two vectors are equal if and only if their corresponding components are equal. Thus, the given vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ will be equal if and only if

$$x = 2,\ y = 2,\ z = 1$$

Example 5 Let $\vec{a} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j}$ and $\vec{b} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j}$. Is $|\vec{a}| = |\vec{b}|$? Are the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ equal?

Solution We have $|\vec{a}| = \sqrt{1^2 + 2^2} = \sqrt{5}$ and $|\vec{b}| = \sqrt{2^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{5}$

So, $|\vec{a}| = |\vec{b}|$. But, the two vectors are not equal since their corresponding components are distinct.

Example 6 Find unit vector in the direction of vector $\vec{a} = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + \hat{k}$

Solution The unit vector in the direction of a vector $\vec{a}$ is given by $\hat{a} = \frac{1}{|\vec{a}|}\vec{a}$.

Now $$|\vec{a}| = \sqrt{2^2 + 3^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{14}$$

Therefore $$\hat{a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{14}}(2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + \hat{k}) = \frac{2}{\sqrt{14}}\hat{i} + \frac{3}{\sqrt{14}}\hat{j} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{14}}\hat{k}$$

Example 7 Find a vector in the direction of vector $\vec{a} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j}$ that has magnitude 7 units.

Solution The unit vector in the direction of the given vector $\vec{a}$ is

$$\hat{a} = \frac{1}{|\vec{a}|}\vec{a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}(\hat{i} - 2\hat{j}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{i} - \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{j}$$

Therefore, the vector having magnitude equal to 7 and in the direction of $\vec{a}$ is

$$7\hat{a} = 7\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{i} - \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{j}\right) = \frac{7}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{i} - \frac{14}{\sqrt{5}}\hat{j}$$

Example 8 Find the unit vector in the direction of the sum of the vectors, $\vec{a} = 2\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$.

Solution The sum of the given vectors is

$$\vec{a} + \vec{b}\ (= \vec{c}, \text{say}) = 4\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - 2\hat{k}$$

and $$|\vec{c}| = \sqrt{4^2 + 3^2 + (-2)^2} = \sqrt{29}$$

Thus, the required unit vector is

$$\hat{c} = \frac{1}{|\vec{c}|}\vec{c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{29}}(4\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - 2\hat{k}) = \frac{4}{\sqrt{29}}\hat{i} + \frac{3}{\sqrt{29}}\hat{j} - \frac{2}{\sqrt{29}}\hat{k}$$

Example 9 Write the direction ratio's of the vector $\vec{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} - 2\hat{k}$ and hence calculate its direction cosines.

Solution Note that the direction ratio's a, b, c of a vector $\vec{r} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k}$ are just the respective components x, y and z of the vector. So, for the given vector, we have $a = 1$, $b = 1$ and $c = -2$. Further, if l, m and n are the direction cosines of the given vector, then

$$l = \frac{a}{|\vec{r}|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}, \quad m = \frac{b}{|\vec{r}|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}, \quad n = \frac{c}{|\vec{r}|} = \frac{-2}{\sqrt{6}} \text{ as } |\vec{r}| = \sqrt{6}$$

Thus, the direction cosines are $\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}, -\frac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\right)$.

10.5.2 *Vector joining two points*

If $P_1(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $P_2(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ are any two points, then the vector joining P_1 and P_2 is the vector $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$ (Fig 10.15).

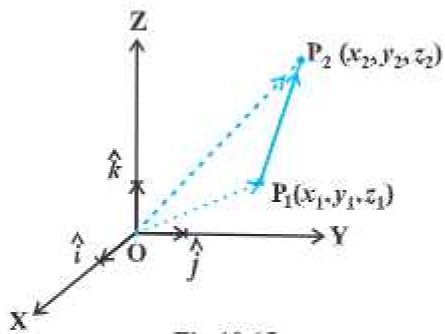


Fig 10.15

Joining the points P_1 and P_2 with the origin O, and applying triangle law, from the triangle OP_1P_2, we have

$$\overrightarrow{OP_1} + \overrightarrow{P_1P_2} = \overrightarrow{OP_2}$$

Using the properties of vector addition, the above equation becomes

$$\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} = \overrightarrow{OP_2} - \overrightarrow{OP_1}$$

i.e.

$$\overrightarrow{P_1P_2} = (x_2\hat{i} + y_2\hat{j} + z_2\hat{k}) - (x_1\hat{i} + y_1\hat{j} + z_1\hat{k})$$

$$= (x_2 - x_1)\hat{i} + (y_2 - y_1)\hat{j} + (z_2 - z_1)\hat{k}$$

The magnitude of vector $\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}$ is given by

$$|\overrightarrow{P_1P_2}| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

Example 10 Find the vector joining the points P(2, 3, 0) and Q(– 1, – 2, – 4) directed from P to Q.

Solution Since the vector is to be directed from P to Q, clearly P is the initial point and Q is the terminal point. So, the required vector joining P and Q is the vector $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, given by

$$\overrightarrow{PQ} = (-1-2)\hat{i} + (-2-3)\hat{j} + (-4-0)\hat{k}$$

i.e.

$$\overrightarrow{PQ} = -3\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} - 4\hat{k}.$$

10.5.3 *Section formula*

Let P and Q be two points represented by the position vectors $\overrightarrow{OP}$ and $\overrightarrow{OQ}$, respectively, with respect to the origin O. Then the line segment joining the points P and Q may be divided by a third point, say R, in two ways – internally (Fig 10.16) and externally (Fig 10.17). Here, we intend to find the position vector $\overrightarrow{OR}$ for the point R with respect to the origin O. We take the two cases one by one.

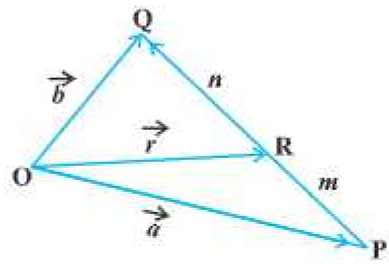


Fig 10.16

Case I When R divides PQ internally (Fig 10.16). If R divides $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ such that $m\,\overrightarrow{RQ} = n\,\overrightarrow{PR}$, where m and n are positive scalars, we say that the point R divides $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ internally in the ratio of $m : n$. Now from triangles ORQ and OPR, we have

$$\overrightarrow{RQ} = \overrightarrow{OQ} - \overrightarrow{OR} = \vec{b} - \vec{r}$$

and

$$\overrightarrow{PR} = \overrightarrow{OR} - \overrightarrow{OP} = \vec{r} - \vec{a},$$

Therefore, we have $\quad m(\vec{b} - \vec{r}) = n(\vec{r} - \vec{a})$ (Why?)

or

$$\vec{r} = \frac{m\vec{b} + n\vec{a}}{m+n} \quad \text{(on simplification)}$$

Hence, the position vector of the point R which divides P and Q internally in the ratio of $m : n$ is given by

$$\overrightarrow{OR} = \frac{m\vec{b} + n\vec{a}}{m+n}$$

Case II When R divides PQ externally (Fig 10.17). We leave it to the reader as an exercise to verify that the position vector of the point R which divides the line segment PQ externally in the ratio $m : n$ i.e. $\frac{PR}{QR} = \frac{m}{n}$ is given by

$$\overrightarrow{OR} = \frac{m\vec{b} - n\vec{a}}{m - n}$$

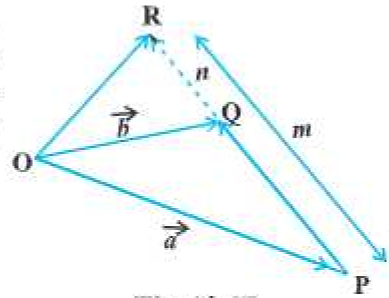


Fig 10.17

Remark If R is the midpoint of PQ , then $m = n$. And therefore, from Case I, the midpoint R of $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, will have its position vector as

$$\overrightarrow{OR} = \frac{\vec{a} + \vec{b}}{2}$$

Example 11 Consider two points P and Q with position vectors $\overrightarrow{OP} = 3\vec{a} - 2\vec{b}$ and $\overrightarrow{OQ} = \vec{a} + \vec{b}$. Find the position vector of a point R which divides the line joining P and Q in the ratio 2:1, (i) internally, and (ii) externally.

Solution

(i) The position vector of the point R dividing the join of P and Q internally in the ratio 2:1 is

$$\overrightarrow{OR} = \frac{2(\vec{a} + \vec{b}) + (3\vec{a} - 2\vec{b})}{2 + 1} = \frac{5\vec{a}}{3}$$

(ii) The position vector of the point R dividing the join of P and Q externally in the ratio 2:1 is

$$\overrightarrow{OR} = \frac{2(\vec{a} + \vec{b}) - (3\vec{a} - 2\vec{b})}{2 - 1} = 4\vec{b} - \vec{a}$$

Example 12 Show that the points $A(2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k})$, $B(\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k})$, $C(3\hat{i} - 4j - 4\hat{k})$ are the vertices of a right angled triangle.

Solution We have

$$\overrightarrow{AB} = (1-2)\hat{i} + (-3+1)\hat{j} + (-5-1)\hat{k} = -\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} - 6\hat{k}$$

$$\overrightarrow{BC} = (3-1)\hat{i} + (-4+3)\hat{j} + (-4+5)\hat{k} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$$

and $$\overrightarrow{CA} = (2-3)\hat{i} + (-1+4)\hat{j} + (1+4)\hat{k} = -\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 5\hat{k}$$

Further, note that

$$|\overrightarrow{AB}|^2 = 41 = 6 + 35 = |\overrightarrow{BC}|^2 + |\overrightarrow{CA}|^2$$

Hence, the triangle is a right angled triangle.

EXERCISE 10.2

1. Compute the magnitude of the following vectors:

$$\vec{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + k; \quad \vec{b} = 2\hat{i} - 7\hat{j} - 3\hat{k}; \quad \vec{c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{j} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{k}$$

2. Write two different vectors having same magnitude.
3. Write two different vectors having same direction.
4. Find the values of x and y so that the vectors $2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j}$ and $x\hat{i} + y\hat{j}$ are equal.
5. Find the scalar and vector components of the vector with initial point (2, 1) and terminal point (– 5, 7).
6. Find the sum of the vectors $\vec{a} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$, $\vec{b} = -2\hat{i} + 4\hat{j} + 5\hat{k}$ and $\vec{c} = \hat{i} - 6\hat{j} - 7\hat{k}$.
7. Find the unit vector in the direction of the vector $\vec{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$.
8. Find the unit vector in the direction of vector $\overrightarrow{PQ}$, where P and Q are the points (1, 2, 3) and (4, 5, 6), respectively.
9. For given vectors, $\vec{a} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = -\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k}$, find the unit vector in the direction of the vector $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$.
10. Find a vector in the direction of vector $5\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ which has magnitude 8 units.
11. Show that the vectors $2\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ and $-4\hat{i} + 6\hat{j} - 8\hat{k}$ are collinear.
12. Find the direction cosines of the vector $\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$.
13. Find the direction cosines of the vector joining the points A (1, 2, –3) and B (–1, –2, 1), directed from A to B.
14. Show that the vector $\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$ is equally inclined to the axes OX, OY and OZ.
15. Find the position vector of a point R which divides the line joining two points P and Q whose position vectors are $\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - \hat{k}$ and $-\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$ respectively, in the ratio 2 : 1

    (i) internally (ii) externally

16. Find the position vector of the mid point of the vector joining the points P(2, 3, 4) and Q(4, 1, –2).

17. Show that the points A, B and C with position vectors, $\vec{a} = 3\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} - 4\hat{k}$, $\vec{b} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$ and $\vec{c} = \hat{i} - 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}$, respectively form the vertices of a right angled triangle.

18. In triangle ABC (Fig 10.18), which of the following is not true:

(A) $\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC} + \overrightarrow{CA} = \vec{0}$

(B) $\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC} - \overrightarrow{AC} = \vec{0}$

(C) $\overrightarrow{AB} + \overrightarrow{BC} - \overrightarrow{AC} = \vec{0}$

(D) $\overrightarrow{AB} - \overrightarrow{CB} + \overrightarrow{CA} = \vec{0}$

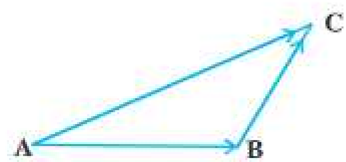


Fig 10.18

19. If $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are two collinear vectors, then which of the following are incorrect:

(A) $\vec{b} = \lambda\vec{a}$, for some scalar λ

(B) $\vec{a} = \pm\vec{b}$

(C) the respective components of $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are not proportional

(D) both the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ have same direction, but different magnitudes.

10.6 Product of Two Vectors

So far we have studied about addition and subtraction of vectors. An other algebraic operation which we intend to discuss regarding vectors is their product. We may recall that product of two numbers is a number, product of two matrices is again a matrix. But in case of functions, we may multiply them in two ways, namely, multiplication of two functions pointwise and composition of two functions. Similarly, multiplication of two vectors is also defined in two ways, namely, scalar (or dot) product where the result is a scalar, and vector (or cross) product where the result is a vector. Based upon these two types of products for vectors, they have found various applications in geometry, mechanics and engineering. In this section, we will discuss these two types of products.

10.6.1 *Scalar (or dot) product of two vectors*

Definition 2 The scalar product of two nonzero vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, denoted by $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}$, is defined as $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\cos\theta,$

where, θ is the angle between $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, $0 \le \theta \le \pi$ (Fig 10.19).

If either $\vec{a} = 0$ or $\vec{b} = 0$ then θ is not defined, and in this case, we define $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 0$

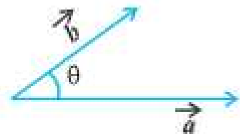


Fig 10.19

Observations

1. $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}$ is a real number.
2. Let $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ be two nonzero vectors, then $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 0$ if and only if $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are perpendicular to each other. i.e.

   $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \vec{a} \perp \vec{b}$
3. If θ = 0, then $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|$

   In particular, $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{a} = |\vec{a}|^2$, as θ in this case is 0.
4. If θ = π, then $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = -|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|$

   In particular, $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = -|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|$, as θ in this case is π.
5. In view of the Observations 2 and 3, for mutually perpendicular unit vectors $\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$, we have

$$\hat{i} \cdot \hat{i} = \hat{j} \cdot \hat{j} = \hat{k} \cdot \hat{k} = 1,$$
$$\hat{i} \cdot \hat{j} = \hat{j} \cdot \hat{k} = \hat{k} \cdot \hat{i} = 0$$

6. The angle between two nonzero vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ is given by

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}}{|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|}, \text{ or } \theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\vec{a}.\vec{b}}{|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|}\right)$$

7. The scalar product is commutative. i.e.

$$\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = \vec{b} \cdot \vec{a} \qquad \text{(Why?)}$$

Two important properties of scalar product

Property 1 (Distributivity of scalar product over addition) Let $\vec{a}$, $\vec{b}$ and $\vec{c}$ be any three vectors, then

$$\vec{a} \cdot (\vec{b} + \vec{c}) = \vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} + \vec{a} \cdot \vec{c}$$

Property 2 Let $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ be any two vectors, and l be any scalar. Then

$$(\lambda\vec{a})\cdot\vec{b} = (\lambda\vec{a})\cdot\vec{b} = \lambda(\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}) = \vec{a}\cdot(\lambda\vec{b})$$

If two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are given in component form as $a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$ and $b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}$, then their scalar product is given as

$$\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b} = (a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k})\cdot(b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k})$$

$$= a_1\hat{i}\cdot(b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}) + a_2\hat{j}\cdot(b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}) + a_3\hat{k}\cdot(b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k})$$

$$= a_1b_1(\hat{i}\cdot\hat{i}) + a_1b_2(\hat{i}\cdot\hat{j}) + a_1b_3(\hat{i}\cdot\hat{k}) + a_2b_1(\hat{j}\cdot\hat{i}) + a_2b_2(\hat{j}\cdot\hat{j}) + a_2b_3(\hat{j}\cdot\hat{k})$$

$$+ a_3b_1(\hat{k}\cdot\hat{i}) + a_3b_2(\hat{k}\cdot\hat{j}) + a_3b_3(\hat{k}\cdot\hat{k}) \quad \text{(Using the above Properties 1 and 2)}$$

$$= a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3 \quad \text{(Using Observation 5)}$$

Thus $\quad \vec{a}\cdot\vec{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3$

10.6.2 *Projection of a vector on a line*

Suppose a vector $\overline{AB}$ makes an angle θ with a given directed line l (say), in the *anticlockwise direction* (Fig 10.20). Then the projection of $\overline{AB}$ on l is a vector $\vec{p}$ (say) with magnitude $|\overline{AB}|\,|\cos\theta|$, and the direction of $\vec{p}$ being the same (or opposite) to that of the line l, depending upon whether cos θ is positive or negative. The vector $\vec{p}$

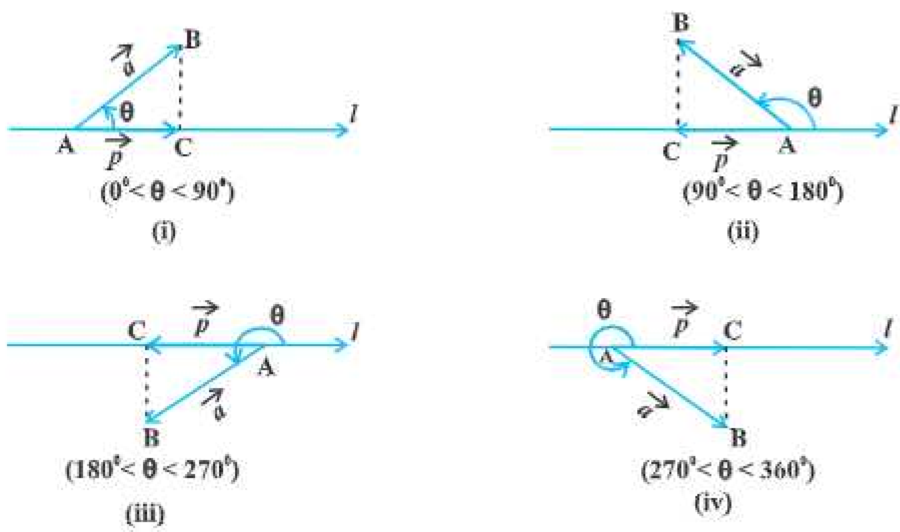


Fig 10.20

is called the *projection vector*, and its magnitude $|\vec{p}|$ is simply called as the *projection* of the vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$ on the directed line l.

For example, in each of the following figures (Fig 10.20 (i) to (iv)), projection vector of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ along the line l is vector $\overrightarrow{AC}$.

Observations

1. If $\hat{p}$ is the unit vector along a line l, then the projection of a vector $\vec{a}$ on the line l is given by $\vec{a} \cdot \hat{p}$.

2. Projection of a vector $\vec{a}$ on other vector $\vec{b}$, is given by

$$\vec{a} \cdot \hat{b}, \quad \text{or} \quad \vec{a} \cdot \left(\frac{\vec{b}}{|\vec{b}|} \right), \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{1}{|\vec{b}|} (\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b})$$

3. If $\theta = 0$, then the projection vector of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ will be $\overrightarrow{AB}$ itself and if $\theta = \pi$, then the projection vector of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ will be $\overrightarrow{BA}$.

4. If $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ or $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$, then the projection vector of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ will be zero vector.

Remark If α, β and γ are the direction angles of vector $\vec{a} = a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$, then its direction cosines may be given as

$$\cos\alpha = \frac{\vec{a} \cdot \hat{i}}{|\vec{a}||\hat{i}|} = \frac{a_1}{|\vec{a}|}, \quad \cos\beta = \frac{a_2}{|\vec{a}|}, \quad \text{and} \quad \cos\gamma = \frac{a_3}{|\vec{a}|}$$

Also, note that $|\vec{a}|\cos\alpha$, $|\vec{a}|\cos\beta$ and $|\vec{a}|\cos\gamma$ are respectively the projections of $\vec{a}$ along OX, OY and OZ. i.e., the scalar components a_1, a_2 and a_3 of the vector $\vec{a}$, are precisely the projections of $\vec{a}$ along x-axis, y-axis and z-axis, respectively. Further, if $\vec{a}$ is a unit vector, then it may be expressed in terms of its direction cosines as

$$\vec{a} = \cos\alpha\hat{i} + \cos\beta\hat{j} + \cos\gamma\hat{k}$$

Example 13 Find the angle between two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ with magnitudes 1 and 2 respectively and when $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 1$.

Solution Given $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 1, |\vec{a}| = 1$ and $|\vec{b}| = 2$. We have

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}}{|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|} \right) = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2} \right) = \frac{\pi}{3}$$

Example 14 Find angle 'θ' between the vectors $\vec{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = \hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$.

Solution The angle θ between two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ is given by

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}}{|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|}$$

Now $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = (\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k}) \cdot (\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}) = 1 - 1 - 1 = -1.$

Therefore, we have $\cos\theta = \frac{-1}{3}$

hence the required angle is $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)$

Example 15 If $\vec{a} = 5\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 3\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = \hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}$, then show that the vectors $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$ and $\vec{a} - \vec{b}$ are perpendicular.

Solution We know that two nonzero vectors are perpendicular if their scalar product is zero.

Here $\vec{a} + \vec{b} = (5\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 3\hat{k}) + (\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}) = 6\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 8\hat{k}$

and $\vec{a} - \vec{b} = (5\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 3\hat{k}) - (\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}) = 4\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$

So $(\vec{a} + \vec{b}) \cdot (\vec{a} - \vec{b}) = (6\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 8\hat{k}) \cdot (4\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}) = 24 - 8 - 16 = 0.$

Hence $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$ and $\vec{a} - \vec{b}$ are perpendicular vectors.

Example 16 Find the projection of the vector $\vec{a} = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ on the vector $\vec{b} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$.

Solution The projection of vector $\vec{a}$ on the vector $\vec{b}$ is given by

$$\frac{1}{|\vec{b}|}(\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}) = \frac{(2\times1 + 3\times2 + 2\times1)}{\sqrt{(1)^2 + (2)^2 + (1)^2}} = \frac{10}{\sqrt{6}} = \frac{5}{3}\sqrt{6}$$

Example 17 Find $|\vec{a} - \vec{b}|$, if two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are such that $|\vec{a}| = 2$, $|\vec{b}| = 3$ and $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 4$.

Solution We have

$$|\vec{a} - \vec{b}|^2 = (\vec{a} - \vec{b}) \cdot (\vec{a} - \vec{b})$$

$$= \vec{a}.\vec{a} - \vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} - \vec{b} \cdot \vec{a} + \vec{b} \cdot \vec{b}$$

$$= |\vec{a}|^2 - 2(\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}) + |\vec{b}|^2$$

$$= (2)^2 - 2(4) + (3)^2$$

Therefore $$|\vec{a}-\vec{b}| = \sqrt{5}$$

Example 18 If $\vec{a}$ is a unit vector and $(\vec{x}-\vec{a})\cdot(\vec{x}+\vec{a}) = 8$, then find $|\vec{x}|$.

Solution Since $\vec{a}$ is a unit vector, $|\vec{a}| = 1$. Also,

$$(\vec{x}-\vec{a})\cdot(\vec{x}+\vec{a}) = 8$$

or $$\vec{x}\cdot\vec{x} + \vec{x}\cdot\vec{a} - \vec{a}\cdot\vec{x} - \vec{a}\cdot\vec{a} = 8$$

or $$|\vec{x}|^2 - 1 = 8 \text{ i.e. } |\vec{x}|^2 = 9$$

Therefore $|\vec{x}| = 3$ (as magnitude of a vector is non negative).

Example 19 For any two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, we always have $|\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}| \le |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|$ (Cauchy-Schwartz inequality).

Solution The inequality holds trivially when either $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$ or $\vec{b} = \vec{0}$. Actually, in such a situation we have $|\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}| = 0 = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|$. So, let us assume that $|\vec{a}| \ne 0 \ne |\vec{b}|$.
Then, we have

$$\frac{|\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}|}{|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|} = |\cos\theta| \le 1$$

Therefore $$|\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}| \le |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|$$

Example 20 For any two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, we always have $|\vec{a}+\vec{b}| \le |\vec{a}| + |\vec{b}|$ (triangle inequality).

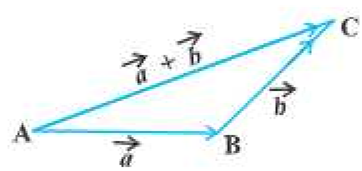


Fig 10.21

Solution The inequality holds trivially in case either $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$ or $\vec{b} = \vec{0}$ (How?). So, let $|\vec{a}| \ne \vec{0} \ne |\vec{b}|$. Then,

$$|\vec{a}+\vec{b}|^2 = (\vec{a}+\vec{b})^2 = (\vec{a}+\vec{b})\cdot(\vec{a}+\vec{b})$$

$$= \vec{a}\cdot\vec{a} + \vec{a}\cdot\vec{b} + \vec{b}\cdot\vec{a} + \vec{b}\cdot\vec{b}$$

$$= |\vec{a}|^2 + 2\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b} + |\vec{b}|^2 \quad \text{(scalar product is commutative)}$$

$$\le |\vec{a}|^2 + 2|\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}| + |\vec{b}|^2 \quad (\text{since } x \le |x|\ \forall x \in \mathbf{R})$$

$$\le |\vec{a}|^2 + 2|\vec{a}||\vec{b}| + |\vec{b}|^2 \quad \text{(from Example 19)}$$

$$= (|\vec{a}| + |\vec{b}|)^2$$

Hence $$|\vec{a}+\vec{b}| \leq |\vec{a}|+|\vec{b}|$$

Remark If the equality holds in triangle inequality (in the above Example 20), i.e.

$$|\vec{a}+\vec{b}| = |\vec{a}|+|\vec{b}|,$$

then $$|\overrightarrow{AC}| = |\overrightarrow{AB}|+|\overrightarrow{BC}|$$

showing that the points A, B and C are collinear.

Example 21 Show that the points $A(-2\hat{i}+3\hat{j}+5\hat{k})$, $B(\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+3\hat{k})$ and $C(7\hat{i}-\hat{k})$ are collinear.

Solution We have

$$\overrightarrow{AB} = (1+2)\hat{i}+(2-3)\hat{j}+(3-5)\hat{k} = 3\hat{i}-\hat{j}-2\hat{k},$$

$$\overrightarrow{BC} = (7-1)\hat{i}+(0-2)\hat{j}+(-1-3)\hat{k} = 6\hat{i}-2\hat{j}-4\hat{k},$$

$$\overrightarrow{AC} = (7+2)\hat{i}+(0-3)\hat{j}+(-1-5)\hat{k} = 9\hat{i}-3\hat{j}-6\hat{k}$$

$$|\overrightarrow{AB}| = \sqrt{14},\ |\overrightarrow{BC}| = 2\sqrt{14} \text{ and } |\overrightarrow{AC}| = 3\sqrt{14}$$

Therefore $$|\overrightarrow{AC}| = |\overrightarrow{AB}|+|\overrightarrow{BC}|$$

Hence the points A, B and C are collinear.

Note In Example 21, one may note that although $\overrightarrow{AB}+\overrightarrow{BC}+\overrightarrow{CA} = \vec{0}$ but the points A, B and C do not form the vertices of a triangle.

EXERCISE 10.3

1. Find the angle between two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ with magnitudes $\sqrt{3}$ and 2, respectively having $\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b} = \sqrt{6}$.
2. Find the angle between the vectors $\hat{i}-2\hat{j}+3\hat{k}$ and $3\hat{i}-2\hat{j}+\hat{k}$
3. Find the projection of the vector $\hat{i}-\hat{j}$ on the vector $\hat{i}+\hat{j}$.
4. Find the projection of the vector $\hat{i}+3\hat{j}+7\hat{k}$ on the vector $7\hat{i}-\hat{j}+8\hat{k}$.
5. Show that each of the given three vectors is a unit vector:

   $$\frac{1}{7}(2\hat{i}+3\hat{j}+6\hat{k}),\ \frac{1}{7}(3\hat{i}-6\hat{j}+2\hat{k}),\ \frac{1}{7}(6\hat{i}+2\hat{j}-3\hat{k})$$

   Also, show that they are mutually perpendicular to each other.

6. Find $|\vec{a}|$ and $|\vec{b}|$, if $(\vec{a}+\vec{b})\cdot(\vec{a}-\vec{b})=8$ and $|\vec{a}|=8|\vec{b}|$.

7. Evaluate the product $(3\vec{a}-5\vec{b})\cdot(2\vec{a}+7\vec{b})$.

8. Find the magnitude of two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, having the same magnitude and such that the angle between them is 60° and their scalar product is $\frac{1}{2}$.

9. Find $|\vec{x}|$, if for a unit vector $\vec{a}$, $(\vec{x}-\vec{a})\cdot(\vec{x}+\vec{a})=12$.

10. If $\vec{a}=2\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+3\hat{k}$, $\vec{b}=-\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+\hat{k}$ and $\vec{c}=3\hat{i}+\hat{j}$ are such that $\vec{a}+\lambda\vec{b}$ is perpendicular to $\vec{c}$, then find the value of λ.

11. Show that $|\vec{a}|\vec{b}+|\vec{b}|\vec{a}$ is perpendicular to $|\vec{a}|\vec{b}-|\vec{b}|\vec{a}$, for any two nonzero vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$.

12. If $\vec{a}\cdot\vec{a}=0$ and $\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}=0$, then what can be concluded about the vector $\vec{b}$?

13. If $\vec{a},\vec{b},\vec{c}$ are unit vectors such that $\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}=\vec{0}$, find the value of $\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}+\vec{b}\cdot\vec{c}+\vec{c}\cdot\vec{a}$.

14. If either vector $\vec{a}=\vec{0}$ or $\vec{b}=\vec{0}$, then $\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}=0$. But the converse need not be true. Justify your answer with an example.

15. If the vertices A, B, C of a triangle ABC are (1, 2, 3), (–1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 2), respectively, then find ∠ABC. [∠ABC is the angle between the vectors $\overrightarrow{BA}$ and $\overrightarrow{BC}$].

16. Show that the points A(1, 2, 7), B(2, 6, 3) and C(3, 10, –1) are collinear.

17. Show that the vectors $2\hat{i}-\hat{j}+\hat{k}$, $\hat{i}-3\hat{j}-5\hat{k}$ and $3\hat{i}-4\hat{j}-4\hat{k}$ form the vertices of a right angled triangle.

18. If $\vec{a}$ is a nonzero vector of magnitude 'a' and λ a nonzero scalar, then $\lambda\vec{a}$ is unit vector if

(A) $\lambda = 1$ (B) $\lambda = -1$ (C) $a = |\lambda|$ (D) $a = 1/|\lambda|$

10.6.3 *Vector (or cross) product of two vectors*

In Section 10.2, we have discussed on the three dimensional right handed rectangular coordinate system. In this system, when the positive x-axis is rotated counterclockwise into the positive y-axis, a right handed (standard) screw would advance in the direction of the positive z-axis (Fig 10.22(i)).

In a right handed coordinate system, the thumb of the right hand points in the direction of the positive z-axis when the fingers are curled in the direction away from the positive x-axis toward the positive y-axis (Fig 10.22(ii)).

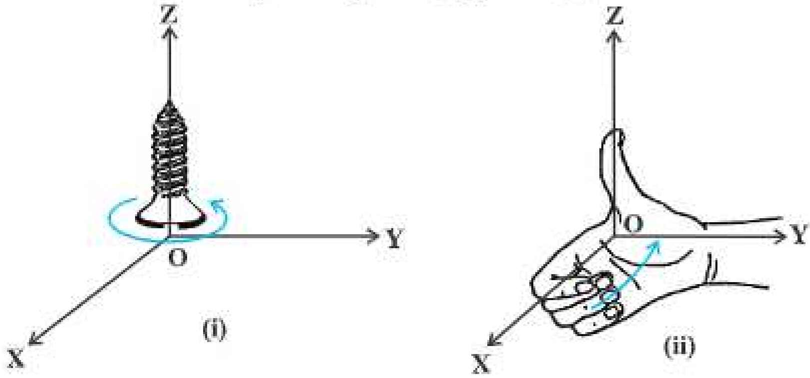


Fig 10.22 (i), (ii)

Definition 3 The vector product of two nonzero vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, is denoted by $\vec{a} \times \vec{b}$ and defined as

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\sin\theta\,\hat{n},$$

where, θ is the angle between $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, $0 \le \theta \le \pi$ and $\hat{n}$ is a unit vector perpendicular to both $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, such that $\vec{a}, \vec{b}$ and $\hat{n}$ form a right handed system (Fig 10.23). i.e., the right handed system rotated from $\vec{a}$ to $\vec{b}$ moves in the direction of $\hat{n}$.

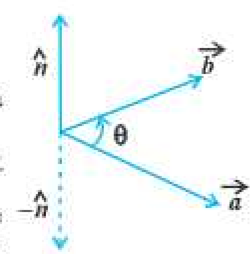


Fig 10.23

If either $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$ or $\vec{b} = \vec{0}$, then θ is not defined and in this case, we define $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0}$.

Observations

1. $\vec{a} \times \vec{b}$ is a vector.
2. Let $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ be two nonzero vectors. Then $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0}$ if and only if $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are parallel (or collinear) to each other, i.e.,

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0} \Leftrightarrow \vec{a} \parallel \vec{b}$$

In particular, $\vec{a} \times \vec{a} = \vec{0}$ and $\vec{a} \times (-\vec{a}) = \vec{0}$, since in the first situation, $\theta = 0$ and in the second one, $\theta = \pi$, making the value of $\sin\theta$ to be 0.

3. If $\theta = \dfrac{\pi}{2}$ then $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|$.

4. In view of the Observations 2 and 3, for mutually perpendicular unit vectors $\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$ (Fig 10.24), we have

$$\hat{i} \times \hat{i} = \hat{j} \times \hat{j} = \hat{k} \times \hat{k} = \vec{0}$$

$$\hat{i} \times \hat{j} = \hat{k},\quad \hat{j} \times \hat{k} = \hat{i},\quad \hat{k} \times \hat{i} = \hat{j}$$

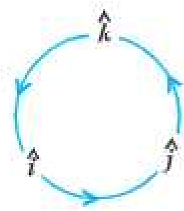


Fig 10.24

5. In terms of vector product, the angle between two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ may be given as

$$\sin\theta = \frac{|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|}{|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|}$$

6. It is always true that the vector product is not commutative, as $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = -\vec{b} \times \vec{a}$. Indeed, $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\sin\theta\,\hat{n}$, where $\vec{a}, \vec{b}$ and $\hat{n}$ form a right handed system, i.e., θ is traversed from $\vec{a}$ to $\vec{b}$, Fig 10.25 (i). While, $\vec{b} \times \vec{a} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\sin\theta\,\hat{n}_1$, where $\vec{b}, \vec{a}$ and $\hat{n}_1$ form a right handed system i.e. θ is traversed from $\vec{b}$ to $\vec{a}$, Fig 10.25(ii).

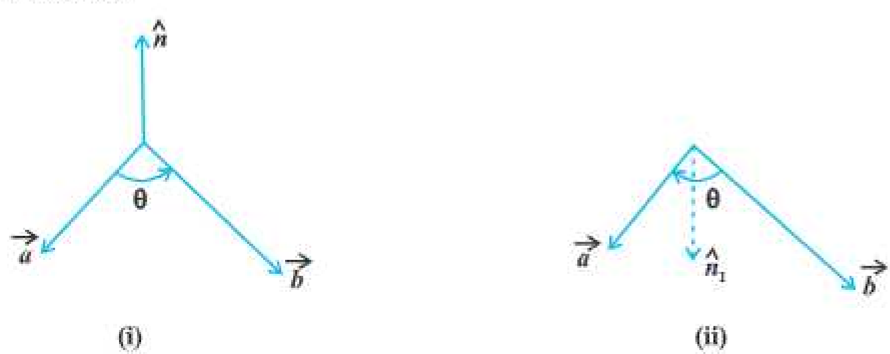


Fig 10.25 (i), (ii)

Thus, if we assume $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ to lie in the plane of the paper, then $\hat{n}$ and $\hat{n}_1$ both will be perpendicular to the plane of the paper. But, $\hat{n}$ being directed above the paper while $\hat{n}_1$ directed below the paper. i.e. $\hat{n}_1 = -\hat{n}$.

Hence $$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\sin\theta\,\hat{n}$$

$$= -|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\sin\theta\,\hat{n}_1 = -\vec{b} \times \vec{a}$$

7. In view of the Observations 4 and 6, we have

$$\hat{j} \times \hat{i} = -\hat{k},\quad \hat{k} \times \hat{j} = -\hat{i} \text{ and } \hat{i} \times \hat{k} = -\hat{j}.$$

8. If $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ represent the adjacent sides of a triangle then its area is given as $\frac{1}{2}|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|$.

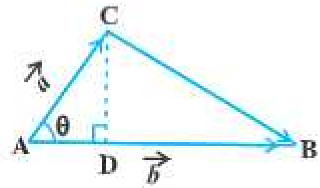


Fig 10.26

By definition of the area of a triangle, we have from Fig 10.26,

Area of triangle ABC $= \frac{1}{2}\text{AB} \cdot \text{CD}$.

But $\text{AB} = |\vec{b}|$ (as given), and $\text{CD} = |\vec{a}|\sin\theta$.

Thus, Area of triangle ABC $= \frac{1}{2}|\vec{b}||\vec{a}|\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|$.

9. If $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ represent the adjacent sides of a parallelogram, then its area is given by $|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|$.

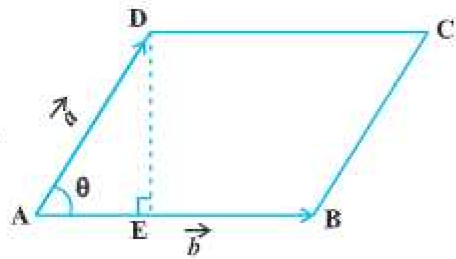


Fig 10.27

From Fig 10.27, we have

Area of parallelogram ABCD = AB. DE.

But $\text{AB} = |\vec{b}|$ (as given), and

$\text{DE} = |\vec{a}|\sin\theta$.

Thus,

Area of parallelogram ABCD $= |\vec{b}||\vec{a}|\sin\theta = |\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|$.

We now state two important properties of vector product.

Property 3 (Distributivity of vector product over addition): If $\vec{a}, \vec{b}$ and $\vec{c}$ are any three vectors and λ be a scalar, then

(i) $\vec{a} \times (\vec{b} + \vec{c}) = \vec{a} \times \vec{b} + \vec{a} \times \vec{c}$

(ii) $\lambda(\vec{a} \times \vec{b}) = (\lambda\vec{a}) \times \vec{b} = \vec{a} \times (\lambda\vec{b})$

Let $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ be two vectors given in component form as $a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$ and $b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}$, respectively. Then their cross product may be given by

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

Explanation We have

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = (a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}) \times (b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k})$$

$$= a_1b_1(\hat{i}\times\hat{i}) + a_1b_2(\hat{i}\times\hat{j}) + a_1b_3(\hat{i}\times\hat{k}) + a_2b_1(\hat{j}\times\hat{i})$$

$$+ a_2b_2(\hat{j}\times\hat{j}) + a_2b_3(\hat{j}\times\hat{k})$$

$$+ a_3b_1(\hat{k}\times\hat{i}) + a_3b_2(\hat{k}\times\hat{j}) + a_3b_3(\hat{k}\times\hat{k}) \qquad \text{(by Property 1)}$$

$$= a_1b_2(\hat{i}\times\hat{j}) - a_1b_3(\hat{k}\times\hat{i}) - a_2b_1(\hat{i}\times\hat{j})$$

$$+ a_2b_3(\hat{j}\times\hat{k}) + a_3b_1(\hat{k}\times\hat{i}) - a_3b_2(\hat{j}\times\hat{k})$$

(as $\hat{i}\times\hat{i} = \hat{j}\times\hat{j} = \hat{k}\times\hat{k} = 0$ and $\hat{i}\times\hat{k} = -\hat{k}\times\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}\times\hat{i} = -\hat{i}\times\hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}\times\hat{j} = -\hat{j}\times\hat{k}$)

$$= a_1b_2\hat{k} - a_1b_3\hat{j} - a_2b_1\hat{k} + a_2b_3\hat{i} + a_3b_1\hat{j} - a_3b_2\hat{i}$$

(as $\hat{i}\times\hat{j} = \hat{k}$, $\hat{j}\times\hat{k} = \hat{i}$ and $\hat{k}\times\hat{i} = \hat{j}$)

$$= (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)\hat{i} - (a_1b_3 - a_3b_1)\hat{j} + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)\hat{k}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

Example 22 Find $|\vec{a}\times\vec{b}|$, if $\vec{a} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = 3\hat{i} + 5\hat{j} - 2\hat{k}$

Solution We have

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & 5 & -2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \hat{i}(-2-15) - (-4-9)\hat{j} + (10-3)\hat{k} = -17\hat{i} + 13\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$$

Hence $\quad |\vec{a}\times\vec{b}| = \sqrt{(-17)^2 + (13)^2 + (7)^2} = \sqrt{507}$

Example 23 Find a unit vector perpendicular to each of the vectors $(\vec{a}+\vec{b})$ and $(\vec{a}-\vec{b})$, where $\vec{a}=\hat{i}+\hat{j}+\hat{k}$, $\vec{b}=\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+3\hat{k}$.

Solution We have $\vec{a}+\vec{b}=2\hat{i}+3\hat{j}+4\hat{k}$ and $\vec{a}-\vec{b}=-\hat{j}-2\hat{k}$

A vector which is perpendicular to both $\vec{a}+\vec{b}$ and $\vec{a}-\vec{b}$ is given by

$$(\vec{a}+\vec{b})\times(\vec{a}-\vec{b}) = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & -1 & -2 \end{vmatrix} = -2\hat{i}+4\hat{j}-2\hat{k} \quad (=\vec{c}, \text{ say})$$

Now $$|\vec{c}| = \sqrt{4+16+4} = \sqrt{24} = 2\sqrt{6}$$

Therefore, the required unit vector is

$$\frac{\vec{c}}{|\vec{c}|} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{i}+\frac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{j}-\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{k}$$

Note There are two perpendicular directions to any plane. Thus, another unit vector perpendicular to $\vec{a}+\vec{b}$ and $\vec{a}-\vec{b}$ will be $\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{i}-\frac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{j}+\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{k}$. But that will be a consequence of $(\vec{a}-\vec{b})\times(\vec{a}+\vec{b})$.

Example 24 Find the area of a triangle having the points A(1, 1, 1), B(1, 2, 3) and C(2, 3, 1) as its vertices.

Solution We have $\overrightarrow{AB}=\hat{j}+2\hat{k}$ and $\overrightarrow{AC}=\hat{i}+2\hat{j}$. The area of the given triangle is $\frac{1}{2}|\overrightarrow{AB}\times\overrightarrow{AC}|$.

Now, $$\overrightarrow{AB}\times\overrightarrow{AC} = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = -4\hat{i}+2\hat{j}-\hat{k}$$

Therefore $$|\overrightarrow{AB}\times\overrightarrow{AC}| = \sqrt{16+4+1} = \sqrt{21}$$

Thus, the required area is $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{21}$

Example 25 Find the area of a parallelogram whose adjacent sides are given by the vectors $\vec{a} = 3\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = \hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$

Solution The area of a parallelogram with $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ as its adjacent sides is given by $|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|$.

Now
$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ 3 & 1 & 4 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 5\hat{i} + \hat{j} - 4\hat{k}$$

Therefore
$$|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}| = \sqrt{25+1+16} = \sqrt{42}$$

and hence, the required area is $\sqrt{42}$.

EXERCISE 10.4

1. Find $|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}|$, if $\vec{a} = \hat{i} - 7\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$.
2. Find a unit vector perpendicular to each of the vector $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$ and $\vec{a} - \vec{b}$, where $\vec{a} = 3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 2\hat{k}$.
3. If a unit vector $\vec{a}$ makes angles $\frac{\pi}{3}$ with $\hat{i}$, $\frac{\pi}{4}$ with $\hat{j}$ and an acute angle θ with $\hat{k}$, then find θ and hence, the components of $\vec{a}$.
4. Show that
$$(\vec{a} - \vec{b}) \times (\vec{a} + \vec{b}) = 2(\vec{a} \times \vec{b})$$
5. Find λ and μ if $(2\hat{i} + 6\hat{j} + 27\hat{k}) \times (\hat{i} + \lambda\hat{j} + \mu\hat{k}) = \vec{0}$.
6. Given that $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = 0$ and $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0}$. What can you conclude about the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$?
7. Let the vectors $\vec{a}, \vec{b}, \vec{c}$ be given as $a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$, $b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}$, $c_1\hat{i} + c_2\hat{j} + c_3\hat{k}$. Then show that $\vec{a} \times (\vec{b} + \vec{c}) = \vec{a} \times \vec{b} + \vec{a} \times \vec{c}$.
8. If either $\vec{a} = \vec{0}$ or $\vec{b} = \vec{0}$, then $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0}$. Is the converse true? Justify your answer with an example.
9. Find the area of the triangle with vertices A(1, 1, 2), B(2, 3, 5) and C(1, 5, 5).

10. Find the area of the parallelogram whose adjacent sides are determined by the vectors $\vec{a} = \hat{i} - \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = 2\hat{i} - 7\hat{j} + \hat{k}$.

11. Let the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ be such that $|\vec{a}| = 3$ and $|\vec{b}| = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$, then $\vec{a} \times \vec{b}$ is a unit vector, if the angle between $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ is

(A) $\pi/6$ (B) $\pi/4$ (C) $\pi/3$ (D) $\pi/2$

12. Area of a rectangle having vertices A, B, C and D with position vectors $-\hat{i} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$, $\hat{i} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$, $\hat{i} - \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ and $-\hat{i} - \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$, respectively is

(A) $\frac{1}{2}$ (B) 1

(C) 2 (D) 4

Miscellaneous Examples

Example 26 Write all the unit vectors in XY-plane.

Solution Let $\vec{r} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j}$ be a unit vector in XY-plane (Fig 10.28). Then, from the figure, we have $x = \cos\theta$ and $y = \sin\theta$ (since $|\vec{r}| = 1$). So, we may write the vector $\vec{r}$ as

$$\vec{r}\left(= \overrightarrow{OP}\right) = \cos\theta\,\hat{i} + \sin\theta\,\hat{j} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Clearly, $$|\vec{r}| = \sqrt{\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta} = 1$$

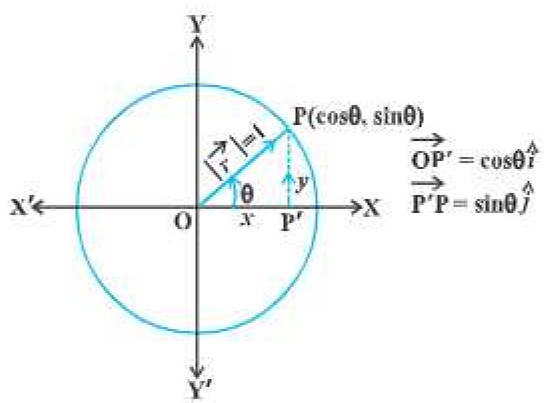


Fig 10.28

Also, as θ varies from 0 to 2π, the point P (Fig 10.28) traces the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ counterclockwise, and this covers all possible directions. So, (1) gives every unit vector in the XY-plane.

Example 27 If $\hat{i}+\hat{j}+\hat{k}$, $2\hat{i}+5\hat{j}$, $3\hat{i}+2\hat{j}-3\hat{k}$ and $\hat{i}-6\hat{j}-\hat{k}$ are the position vectors of points A, B, C and D respectively, then find the angle between $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$. Deduce that $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$ are collinear.

Solution Note that if θ is the angle between AB and CD, then θ is also the angle between $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$.

Now $\overrightarrow{AB}$ = Position vector of B – Position vector of A

$$= (2\hat{i}+5\hat{j})-(\hat{i}+\hat{j}+\hat{k}) = \hat{i}+4\hat{j}-\hat{k}$$

Therefore $$|\overrightarrow{AB}| = \sqrt{(1)^2+(4)^2+(-1)^2} = 3\sqrt{2}$$

Similarly $$\overrightarrow{CD} = -2\hat{i}-8\hat{j}+2\hat{k} \text{ and } |\overrightarrow{CD}| = 6\sqrt{2}$$

Thus $$\cos\theta = \frac{\overrightarrow{AB}\cdot\overrightarrow{CD}}{|\overrightarrow{AB}||\overrightarrow{CD}|}$$

$$= \frac{1(-2)+4(-8)+(-1)(2)}{(3\sqrt{2})(6\sqrt{2})} = \frac{-36}{36} = -1$$

Since $0 \le \theta \le \pi$, it follows that $\theta = \pi$. This shows that $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$ are collinear.

Alternatively, $\overrightarrow{AB} = -\frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{CD}$ which implies that $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$ are collinear vectors.

Example 28 Let $\vec{a}, \vec{b}$ and $\vec{c}$ be three vectors such that $|\vec{a}| = 3, |\vec{b}| = 4, |\vec{c}| = 5$ and each one of them being perpendicular to the sum of the other two, find $|\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}|$.

Solution Given $\vec{a}\cdot(\vec{b}+\vec{c}) = 0,\ \vec{b}\cdot(\vec{c}+\vec{a}) = 0,\ \vec{c}\cdot(\vec{a}+\vec{b}) = 0.$

Now $$|\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}|^2 = (\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c})^2 = (\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c})\cdot(\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c})$$

$$= \vec{a}\cdot\vec{a}+\vec{a}\cdot(\vec{b}+\vec{c})+\vec{b}\cdot\vec{b}+\vec{b}\cdot(\vec{a}+\vec{c})$$
$$+\ \vec{c}.(\vec{a}+\vec{b})+\vec{c}.\vec{c}$$

$$= |\vec{a}|^2+|\vec{b}|^2+|\vec{c}|^2$$

$$= 9+16+25 = 50$$

Therefore $$|\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}| = \sqrt{50} = 5\sqrt{2}$$

Example 29 Three vectors $\vec{a}$, $\vec{b}$ and $\vec{c}$ satisfy the condition $\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}=\vec{0}$. Evaluate the quantity $\mu=\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}+\vec{b}\cdot\vec{c}+\vec{c}\cdot\vec{a}$, if $|\vec{a}|=3$, $|\vec{b}|=4$ and $|\vec{c}|=2$.

Solution Since $\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}=\vec{0}$, we have

$$\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}=\vec{0} \;=0$$

or $$\vec{a}\cdot\vec{a}+\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}+\vec{a}\cdot\vec{c} \;=0$$

Therefore $$\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}+\vec{a}\cdot\vec{c}=-|\vec{a}|^2=-9 \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Again, $$\vec{b}\cdot(\vec{a}+\vec{b}+\vec{c}) \;=0$$

or $$\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}+\vec{b}\cdot\vec{c}=-|\vec{b}|^2=-16 \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Similarly $$\vec{a}\cdot\vec{c}+\vec{b}\cdot\vec{c} \;=-4. \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

Adding (1), (2) and (3), we have

$$2\,(\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}+\vec{b}\cdot\vec{c}+\vec{a}\cdot\vec{c}) \;=-29$$

or $$2\mu=-29,\ \text{i.e., } \mu=\frac{-29}{2}$$

Example 30 If with reference to the right handed system of mutually perpendicular unit vectors $\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$, $\vec{\alpha}=3\hat{i}-\hat{j}$, $\vec{\beta}=2\hat{i}+\hat{j}-3\hat{k}$, then express $\vec{\beta}$ in the form $\vec{\beta}=\vec{\beta}_1+\vec{\beta}_2$, where $\vec{\beta}_1$ is parallel to $\vec{\alpha}$ and $\vec{\beta}_2$ is perpendicular to $\vec{\alpha}$.

Solution Let $\vec{\beta}_1=\lambda\vec{\alpha}$, λ is a scalar, i.e., $\vec{\beta}_1=3\lambda\hat{i}-\lambda\hat{j}$.

Now $$\vec{\beta}_2=\vec{\beta}-\vec{\beta}_1=(2-3\lambda)\hat{i}+(1+\lambda)\hat{j}-3\hat{k}.$$

Now, since $\vec{\beta}_2$ is to be perpendicular to $\vec{\alpha}$, we should have $\vec{\alpha}\cdot\vec{\beta}_2=0$, i.e.,

$$3(2-3\lambda)-(1+\lambda) \;=0$$

or $$\lambda=\frac{1}{2}$$

Therefore $$\vec{\beta}_1=\frac{3}{2}\hat{i}-\frac{1}{2}\hat{j} \quad\text{and}\quad \vec{\beta}_2=\frac{1}{2}\hat{i}+\frac{3}{2}\hat{j}-3\hat{k}$$

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 10

1. Write down a unit vector in XY-plane, making an angle of 30° with the positive direction of x-axis.

2. Find the scalar components and magnitude of the vector joining the points $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$.

3. A girl walks 4 km towards west, then she walks 3 km in a direction 30° east of north and stops. Determine the girl's displacement from her initial point of departure.

4. If $\vec{a} = \vec{b} + \vec{c}$, then is it true that $|\vec{a}| = |\vec{b}| + |\vec{c}|$? Justify your answer.

5. Find the value of x for which $x(\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k})$ is a unit vector.

6. Find a vector of magnitude 5 units, and parallel to the resultant of the vectors $\vec{a} = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - \hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$.

7. If $\vec{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$, $\vec{b} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ and $\vec{c} = \hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$, find a unit vector parallel to the vector $2\vec{a} - \vec{b} + 3\vec{c}$.

8. Show that the points A (1, – 2, – 8), B (5, 0, –2) and C (11, 3, 7) are collinear, and find the ratio in which B divides AC.

9. Find the position vector of a point R which divides the line joining two points P and Q whose position vectors are $(2\vec{a} + \vec{b})$ and $(\vec{a} - 3\vec{b})$ externally in the ratio 1 : 2. Also, show that P is the mid point of the line segment RQ.

10. The two adjacent sides of a parallelogram are $2\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} + 5\hat{k}$ and $\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} - 3\hat{k}$. Find the unit vector parallel to its diagonal. Also, find its area.

11. Show that the direction cosines of a vector equally inclined to the axes OX, OY and OZ are $\pm\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\right)$.

12. Let $\vec{a} = \hat{i} + 4\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$, $\vec{b} = 3\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$ and $\vec{c} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$. Find a vector $\vec{d}$ which is perpendicular to both $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, and $\vec{c} \cdot \vec{d} = 15$.

13. The scalar product of the vector $\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$ with a unit vector along the sum of vectors $2\hat{i} + 4\hat{j} - 5\hat{k}$ and $\lambda\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ is equal to one. Find the value of λ.

14. If $\vec{a}$, $\vec{b}$, $\vec{c}$ are mutually perpendicular vectors of equal magnitudes, show that the vector $\vec{c} \cdot \vec{d} = 15$ is equally inclined to $\vec{a}$, $\vec{b}$ and $\vec{c}$.

15. Prove that $(\vec{a}+\vec{b})\cdot(\vec{a}+\vec{b})=|\vec{a}|^2+|\vec{b}|^2$, if and only if $\vec{a}, \vec{b}$ are perpendicular, given $\vec{a}\neq\vec{0}, \vec{b}\neq\vec{0}$.

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 16 to 19.

16. If θ is the angle between two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, then $\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}\geq 0$ only when

(A) $0<\theta<\frac{\pi}{2}$ (B) $0\leq\theta\leq\frac{\pi}{2}$

(C) $0<\theta<\pi$ (D) $0\leq\theta\leq\pi$

17. Let $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ be two unit vectors and θ is the angle between them. Then $\vec{a}+\vec{b}$ is a unit vector if

(A) $\theta=\frac{\pi}{4}$ (B) $\theta=\frac{\pi}{3}$ (C) $\theta=\frac{\pi}{2}$ (D) $\theta=\frac{2\pi}{3}$

18. The value of $\hat{i}.(\hat{j}\times\hat{k})+\hat{j}\cdot(\hat{i}\times\hat{k})+\hat{k}\cdot(\hat{i}\times\hat{j})$ is

(A) 0 (B) –1 (C) 1 (D) 3

19. If θ is the angle between any two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, then $|\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b}|=|\vec{a}\times\vec{b}|$ when θ is equal to

(A) 0 (B) $\frac{\pi}{4}$ (C) $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (D) π

Summary

- Position vector of a point P(*x*, *y*, *z*) is given as $\overrightarrow{OP}(=\vec{r})=x\hat{i}+y\hat{j}+z\hat{k}$, and its magnitude by $\sqrt{x^2+y^2+z^2}$.
- The scalar components of a vector are its direction ratios, and represent its projections along the respective axes.
- The magnitude (*r*), direction ratios (*a*, *b*, *c*) and direction cosines (*l*, *m*, *n*) of any vector are related as:

$$l=\frac{a}{r},\quad m=\frac{b}{r},\quad n=\frac{c}{r}$$

- The vector sum of the three sides of a triangle taken in order is $\vec{0}$.
- The vector sum of two coinitial vectors is given by the diagonal of the parallelogram whose adjacent sides are the given vectors.
- The multiplication of a given vector by a scalar λ, changes the magnitude of the vector by the multiple $|\lambda|$, and keeps the direction same (or makes it opposite) according as the value of λ is positive (or negative).
- For a given vector $\vec{a}$, the vector $\hat{a} = \frac{\vec{a}}{|\vec{a}|}$ gives the unit vector in the direction of $\vec{a}$.
- The position vector of a point R dividing a line segment joining the points P and Q whose position vectors are $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ respectively, in the ratio $m : n$

  (i) internally, is given by $\frac{n\vec{a} + m\vec{b}}{m+n}$.

  (ii) externally, is given by $\frac{m\vec{b} - n\vec{a}}{m-n}$.
- The scalar product of two given vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ having angle θ between them is defined as

$$\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\cos\theta.$$

  Also, when $\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}$ is given, the angle 'θ' between the vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ may be determined by

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\vec{a} \cdot \vec{b}}{|\vec{a}||\vec{b}|}$$

- If θ is the angle between two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, then their cross product is given as

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = |\vec{a}||\vec{b}|\sin\theta\,\hat{n}$$

  where $\hat{n}$ is a unit vector perpendicular to the plane containing $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$. Such that $\vec{a}, \vec{b}, \hat{n}$ form right handed system of coordinate axes.
- If we have two vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$, given in component form as $\vec{a} = a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b} = b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}$ and λ any scalar,

then $\vec{a}+\vec{b} = (a_1+b_1)\hat{i}+(a_2+b_2)\hat{j}+(a_3+b_3)\hat{k}$;

$$\lambda\vec{a} = (\lambda a_1)\hat{i}+(\lambda a_2)\hat{j}+(\lambda a_3)\hat{k};$$

$$\vec{a}\cdot\vec{b} = a_1b_1+a_2b_2+a_3b_3;$$

and $\vec{a}\times\vec{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}$.

Historical Note

The word *vector* has been derived from a Latin word *vectus*, which means "to carry". The germinal ideas of modern vector theory date from around 1800 when Caspar Wessel (1745-1818) and Jean Robert Argand (1768-1822) described that how a complex number $a + ib$ could be given a geometric interpretation with the help of a directed line segment in a coordinate plane. William Rowen Hamilton (1805-1865) an Irish mathematician was the first to use the term vector for a directed line segment in his book *Lectures on Quaternions* (1853). Hamilton's method of quaternions (an ordered set of four real numbers given as: $a+b\hat{i}+c\hat{j}+d\hat{k}, \hat{i}, \hat{j}, \hat{k}$ following certain algebraic rules) was a solution to the problem of multiplying vectors in three dimensional space. Though, we must mention here that in practice, the idea of vector concept and their addition was known much earlier ever since the time of Aristotle (384-322 B.C.), a Greek philosopher, and pupil of Plato (427-348 B.C.). That time it was supposed to be known that the combined action of two or more forces could be seen by adding them according to parallelogram law. The correct law for the composition of forces, that forces add vectorially, had been discovered in the case of perpendicular forces by Stevin-Simon (1548-1620). In 1586 A.D., he analysed the principle of geometric addition of forces in his treatise *DeBeghinselen der Weeghconst* ("Principles of the Art of Weighing"), which caused a major breakthrough in the development of mechanics. But it took another 200 years for the general concept of vectors to form.

In the 1880, Josaih Willard Gibbs (1839-1903), an American physicist and mathematician, and Oliver Heaviside (1850-1925), an English engineer, created what we now know as *vector analysis*, essentially by separating the real (*scalar*) part of quaternion from its imaginary (*vector*) part. In 1881 and 1884, Gibbs printed a treatise entitled *Element of Vector Analysis*. This book gave a systematic and concise account of vectors. However, much of the credit for demonstrating the applications of vectors is due to the D. Heaviside and P.G. Tait (1831-1901) who contributed significantly to this subject.

—❖—

Chapter 11

THREE DIMENSIONAL GEOMETRY

❖ *The moving power of mathematical invention is not reasoning but imagination. – A. DEMORGAN* ❖

11.1 Introduction

Leonhard Euler
(1707-1783)

In Class XI, while studying Analytical Geometry in two dimensions, and the introduction to three dimensional geometry, we confined to the Cartesian methods only. In the previous chapter of this book, we have studied some basic concepts of vectors. We will now use vector algebra to three dimensional geometry. The purpose of this approach to 3-dimensional geometry is that it makes the study simple and elegant*.

In this chapter, we shall study the direction cosines and direction ratios of a line joining two points and also discuss about the equations of lines and planes in space under different conditions, angle between two lines, two planes, a line and a plane, shortest distance between two skew lines and distance of a point from a plane. Most of the above results are obtained in vector form. Nevertheless, we shall also translate these results in the Cartesian form which, at times, presents a more clear geometric and analytic picture of the situation.

11.2 Direction Cosines and Direction Ratios of a Line

From Chapter 10, recall that if a directed line L passing through the origin makes angles α, β and γ with *x*, *y* and *z*-axes, respectively, called direction angles, then cosine of these angles, namely, cos α, cos β and cos γ are called direction cosines of the directed line L.

If we reverse the direction of L, then the direction angles are replaced by their supplements, i.e., $\pi - \alpha$, $\pi - \beta$ and $\pi - \gamma$. Thus, the signs of the direction cosines are reversed.

* For various activities in three dimensional geometry, one may refer to the Book *"A Hand Book for designing Mathematics Laboratory in Schools"*, NCERT, 2005

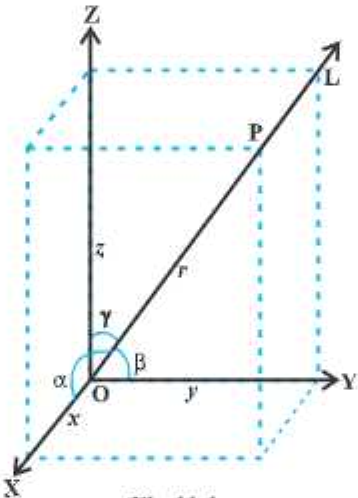


Fig 11.1

Note that a given line in space can be extended in two opposite directions and so it has two sets of direction cosines. In order to have a unique set of direction cosines for a given line in space, we must take the given line as a directed line. These unique direction cosines are denoted by l, m and n.

Remark If the given line in space does not pass through the origin, then, in order to find its direction cosines, we draw a line through the origin and parallel to the given line. Now take one of the directed lines from the origin and find its direction cosines as two parallel line have same set of direction cosines.

Any three numbers which are proportional to the direction cosines of a line are called the *direction ratios* of the line. If l, m, n are direction cosines and a, b, c are direction ratios of a line, then $a = \lambda l$, $b=\lambda m$ and $c = \lambda n$, for any nonzero $\lambda \in \mathbf{R}$.

Note Some authors also call direction ratios as direction numbers.

Let a, b, c be direction ratios of a line and let l, m and n be the direction cosines ($d.c$'s) of the line. Then

$$\frac{l}{a} = \frac{m}{b} = \frac{n}{c} = k \text{ (say), } k \text{ being a constant.}$$

Therefore $\qquad l = ak,\ m = bk,\ n = ck \qquad$ ... (1)

But $\qquad l^2 + m^2 + n^2 = 1$

Therefore $\qquad k^2\ (a^2 + b^2 + c^2) = 1$

or
$$k = \pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2+c^2}}$$

Hence, from (1), the *d.c.'s* of the line are

$$l=\pm\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2+c^2}},m=\pm\frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2+c^2}},n=\pm\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2+c^2}}$$

where, depending on the desired sign of k, either a positive or a negative sign is to be taken for l, m and n.

For any line, if a, b, c are direction ratios of a line, then ka, kb, kc; $k \neq 0$ is also a set of direction ratios. So, any two sets of direction ratios of a line are also proportional. Also, for any line there are infinitely many sets of direction ratios.

11.2.1 *Direction cosines of a line passing through two points*

Since one and only one line passes through two given points, we can determine the direction cosines of a line passing through the given points $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ as follows (Fig 11.2 (a)).

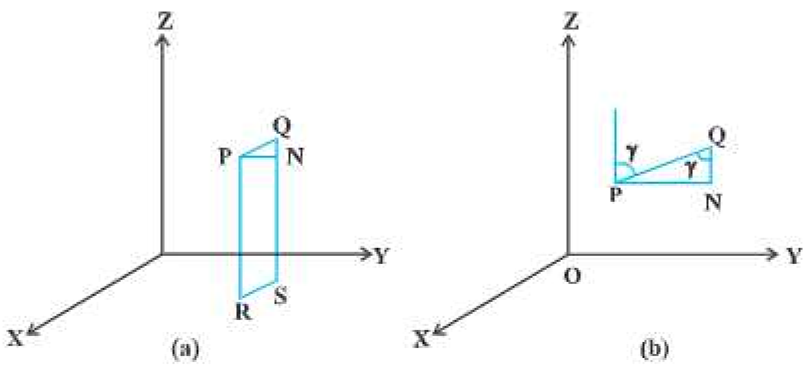


Fig 11.2

Let l, m, n be the direction cosines of the line PQ and let it makes angles α, β and γ with the x, y and z-axis, respectively.

Draw perpendiculars from P and Q to XY-plane to meet at R and S. Draw a perpendicular from P to QS to meet at N. Now, in right angle triangle PNQ, ∠PQN= γ (Fig 11.2 (b).

Therefore, $\cos\gamma = \dfrac{NQ}{PQ} = \dfrac{z_2 - z_1}{PQ}$

Similarly $\cos\alpha = \dfrac{x_2 - x_1}{PQ}$ and $\cos\beta = \dfrac{y_2 - y_1}{PQ}$

Hence, the direction cosines of the line segment joining the points $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ are

$$\frac{x_2 - x_1}{PQ}, \frac{y_2 - y_1}{PQ}, \frac{z_2 - z_1}{PQ}$$

where $$PQ = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

Note The direction ratios of the line segment joining $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ may be taken as

$$x_2 - x_1,\ y_2 - y_1,\ z_2 - z_1 \text{ or } x_1 - x_2,\ y_1 - y_2,\ z_1 - z_2$$

Example 1 If a line makes angle 90°, 60° and 30° with the positive direction of x, y and z-axis respectively, find its direction cosines.

Solution Let the $d.c.$'s of the lines be l, m, n. Then $l = \cos 90^0 = 0$, $m = \cos 60^0 = \frac{1}{2}$,

$n = \cos 30^0 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.

Example 2 If a line has direction ratios 2, – 1, – 2, determine its direction cosines.

Solution Direction cosines are

$$\frac{2}{\sqrt{2^2 + (-1)^2 + (-2)^2}}, \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2^2 + (-1)^2 + (-2)^2}}, \frac{-2}{\sqrt{2^2 + (-1)^2 + (-2)^2}}$$

or $$\frac{2}{3}, \frac{-1}{3}, \frac{-2}{3}$$

Example 3 Find the direction cosines of the line passing through the two points (– 2, 4, – 5) and (1, 2, 3).

Solution We know the direction cosines of the line passing through two points $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ are given by

$$\frac{x_2 - x_1}{PQ}, \frac{y_2 - y_1}{PQ}, \frac{z_2 - z_1}{PQ}$$

where $$PQ = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

Here P is (– 2, 4, – 5) and Q is (1, 2, 3).

So $$PQ = \sqrt{(1-(-2))^2 + (2-4)^2 + (3-(-5))^2} = \sqrt{77}$$

Thus, the direction cosines of the line joining two points is

$$\frac{3}{\sqrt{77}}, \frac{-2}{\sqrt{77}}, \frac{8}{\sqrt{77}}$$

Example 4 Find the direction cosines of x, y and z-axis.

Solution The x-axis makes angles 0°, 90° and 90° respectively with x, y and z-axis. Therefore, the direction cosines of x-axis are cos 0°, cos 90°, cos 90° i.e., 1,0,0. Similarly, direction cosines of y-axis and z-axis are 0, 1, 0 and 0, 0, 1 respectively.

Example 5 Show that the points A (2, 3, – 4), B (1, – 2, 3) and C (3, 8, – 11) are collinear.

Solution Direction ratios of line joining A and B are

$1 - 2, - 2 - 3, 3 + 4$ i.e., $- 1, - 5, 7$.

The direction ratios of line joining B and C are

$3 - 1, 8 + 2, - 11 - 3$, i.e., $2, 10, - 14$.

It is clear that direction ratios of AB and BC are proportional, hence, AB is parallel to BC. But point B is common to both AB and BC. Therefore, A, B, C are collinear points.

EXERCISE 11.1

1. If a line makes angles 90°, 135°, 45° with the x, y and z-axes respectively, find its direction cosines.
2. Find the direction cosines of a line which makes equal angles with the coordinate axes.
3. If a line has the direction ratios –18, 12, – 4, then what are its direction cosines ?
4. Show that the points (2, 3, 4), (– 1, – 2, 1), (5, 8, 7) are collinear.
5. Find the direction cosines of the sides of the triangle whose vertices are (3, 5, – 4), (– 1, 1, 2) and (– 5, – 5, – 2).

11.3 Equation of a Line in Space

We have studied equation of lines in two dimensions in Class XI, we shall now study the vector and cartesian equations of a line in space.

A line is uniquely determined if

(i) it passes through a given point and has given direction, or

(ii) it passes through two given points.

11.3.1 *Equation of a line through a given point and parallel to a given vector $\vec{b}$*

Let $\vec{a}$ be the position vector of the given point A with respect to the origin O of the rectangular coordinate system. Let l be the line which passes through the point A and is parallel to a given vector $\vec{b}$. Let $\vec{r}$ be the position vector of an arbitrary point P on the line (Fig 11.3).

Then $\overrightarrow{AP}$ is parallel to the vector $\vec{b}$, i.e., $\overrightarrow{AP} = \lambda \vec{b}$, where λ is some real number.

But $\qquad \overrightarrow{AP} = \overrightarrow{OP} - \overrightarrow{OA}$

i.e. $\qquad \lambda \vec{b} = \vec{r} - \vec{a}$

Conversely, for each value of the parameter λ, this equation gives the position vector of a point P on the line. Hence, the vector equation of the line is given by

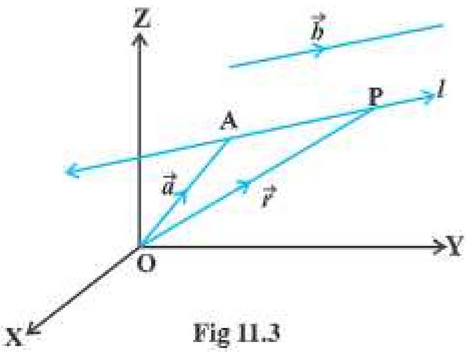


Fig 11.3

$$\vec{r} = \vec{a} + \lambda \vec{b} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Remark If $\vec{b} = a\hat{i} + b\hat{j} + c\hat{k}$, then a, b, c are direction ratios of the line and conversely, if a, b, c are direction ratios of a line, then $\vec{b} = a\hat{i} + b\hat{j} + c\hat{k}$ will be the parallel to the line. Here, b should not be confused with $|\vec{b}|$.

Derivation of cartesian form from vector form

Let the coordinates of the given point A be (x_1, y_1, z_1) and the direction ratios of the line be a, b, c. Consider the coordinates of any point P be (x, y, z). Then

$$\vec{r} = x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k}; \vec{a} = x_1\hat{i} + y_1\hat{j} + z_1\hat{k}$$

and $\qquad \vec{b} = a\hat{i} + b\hat{j} + c\hat{k}$

Substituting these values in (1) and equating the coefficients of $\hat{i}$, $\hat{j}$ and $\hat{k}$, we get

$$x = x_1 + \lambda a; \; y = y_1 + \lambda b; \; z = z_1 + \lambda c \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

These are parametric equations of the line. Eliminating the parameter λ from (2), we get

$$\frac{x - x_1}{a} = \frac{y - y_1}{b} = \frac{z - z_1}{c} \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

This is the Cartesian equation of the line.

Note If l, m, n are the direction cosines of the line, the equation of the line is

$$\frac{x - x_1}{l} = \frac{y - y_1}{m} = \frac{z - z_1}{n}$$

Example 6 Find the vector and the Cartesian equations of the line through the point (5, 2, – 4) and which is parallel to the vector $3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 8\hat{k}$.

Solution We have

$$\vec{a} = 5\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k} \text{ and } \vec{b} = 3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 8\hat{k}$$

Therefore, the vector equation of the line is

$$\vec{r} = 5\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k} + \lambda(3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 8\hat{k})$$

Now, $\vec{r}$ is the position vector of any point P(x, y, z) on the line.

Therefore, $\quad x\hat{i} + y\hat{j} + z\hat{k} = 5\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k} + \lambda(3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 8\hat{k})$

$$= (5 + 3\lambda)\hat{i} + (2 + 2\lambda)\hat{j} + (-4 - 8\lambda)\hat{k}$$

Eliminating λ, we get

$$\frac{x-5}{3} = \frac{y-2}{2} = \frac{z+4}{-8}$$

which is the equation of the line in Cartesian form.

11.4 Angle between Two Lines

Let L_1 and L_2 be two lines passing through the origin and with direction ratios a_1, b_1, c_1 and a_2, b_2, c_2, respectively. Let P be a point on L_1 and Q be a point on L_2. Consider the directed lines OP and OQ as given in Fig 11.6. Let θ be the acute angle between OP and OQ. Now recall that the directed line segments OP and OQ are vectors with components a_1, b_1, c_1 and a_2, b_2, c_2, respectively. Therefore, the angle θ between them is given by

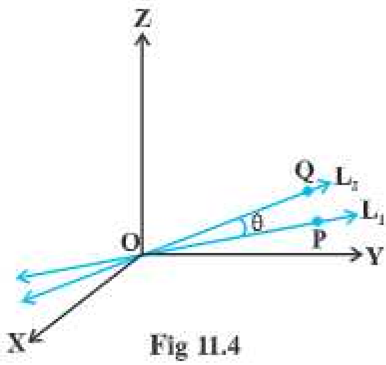


Fig 11.4

$$\cos\theta = \left| \frac{a_1a_2 + b_1b_2 + c_1c_2}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2}\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2 + c_2^2}} \right| \quad \text{... (1)}$$

The angle between the lines in terms of $\sin\theta$ is given by

$$\sin\theta = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2\theta}$$

$$= \sqrt{1 - \frac{(a_1a_2 + b_1b_2 + c_1c_2)^2}{\left(a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2\right)\left(a_2^2 + b_2^2 + c_2^2\right)}}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{\left(a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2\right)\left(a_2^2 + b_2^2 + c_2^2\right) - (a_1a_2 + b_1b_2 + c_1c_2)^2}}{\sqrt{\left(a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2\right)}\sqrt{\left(a_2^2 + b_2^2 + c_2^2\right)}}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{(a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)^2 + (b_1c_2 - b_2c_1)^2 + (c_1a_2 - c_2a_1)^2}}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2}\sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2 + c_2^2}} \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Note In case the lines L_1 and L_2 do not pass through the origin, we may take lines L'_1 and L'_2 which are parallel to L_1 and L_2 respectively and pass through the origin.

If instead of direction ratios for the lines L_1 and L_2, direction cosines, namely, l_1, m_1, n_1 for L_1 and l_2, m_2, n_2 for L_2 are given, then (1) and (2) takes the following form:

$$\cos\theta = |l_1 l_2 + m_1 m_2 + n_1 n_2| \quad (\text{as } l_1^2+m_1^2+n_1^2 = 1 = l_2^2+m_2^2+n_2^2) \qquad \text{... (3)}$$

and $$\sin\theta = \sqrt{(l_1 m_2 - l_2 m_1)^2 - (m_1 n_2 - m_2 n_1)^2 + (n_1 l_2 - n_2 l_1)^2} \qquad \text{... (4)}$$

Two lines with direction ratios a_1, b_1, c_1 and a_2, b_2, c_2 are

(i) perpendicular i.e. if $\theta = 90°$ by (1)

$$\boldsymbol{a_1a_2 + b_1b_2 + c_1c_2 = 0}$$

(ii) parallel i.e. if $\theta = 0$ by (2)

$$\boldsymbol{\frac{a_1}{a_2} = \frac{b_1}{b_2} = \frac{c_1}{c_2}}$$

Now, we find the angle between two lines when their equations are given. If θ is acute the angle between the lines

$$\vec{r} = \vec{a}_1 + \lambda\vec{b}_1 \text{ and } \vec{r} = \vec{a}_2 + \mu\vec{b}_2$$

then $$\cos\theta = \left|\frac{\vec{b}_1\cdot\vec{b}_2}{|\vec{b}_1||\vec{b}_2|}\right|$$

In Cartesian form, if θ is the angle between the lines

$$\frac{x-x_1}{a_1} = \frac{y-y_1}{b_1} = \frac{z-z_1}{c_1} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

and $$\frac{x-x_2}{a_2} = \frac{y-y_2}{b_2} = \frac{z-z_2}{c_2} \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

where, a_1, b_1, c_1 and a_2, b_2, c_2 are the direction ratios of the lines (1) and (2), respectively, then

$$\cos\theta = \left|\frac{a_1a_2 + b_1b_2 + c_1c_2}{\sqrt{a_1^2+b_1^2+c_1^2}\sqrt{a_2^2+b_2^2+c_2^2}}\right|$$

Example 7 Find the angle between the pair of lines given by

$$\vec{r} = 3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k} + \lambda(\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$$

and $\vec{r} = 5\hat{i} - 2\hat{j} + \mu(3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 6\hat{k})$

Solution Here $\vec{b}_1 = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ and $\vec{b}_2 = 3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 6\hat{k}$

The angle θ between the two lines is given by

$$\cos\theta = \left|\frac{\vec{b}_1 \cdot \vec{b}_2}{|\vec{b}_1||\vec{b}_2|}\right| = \left|\frac{(\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+2\hat{k})\cdot(3\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+6\hat{k})}{\sqrt{1+4+4}\sqrt{9+4+36}}\right|$$

$$= \left|\frac{3+4+12}{3\times 7}\right| = \frac{19}{21}$$

Hence $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{19}{21}\right)$

Example 8 Find the angle between the pair of lines

$$\frac{x+3}{3} = \frac{y-1}{5} = \frac{z+3}{4}$$

and

$$\frac{x+1}{1} = \frac{y-4}{1} = \frac{z-5}{2}$$

Solution The direction ratios of the first line are 3, 5, 4 and the direction ratios of the second line are 1, 1, 2. If θ is the angle between them, then

$$\cos\theta = \left|\frac{3.1+5.1+4.2}{\sqrt{3^2+5^2+4^2}\sqrt{1^2+1^2+2^2}}\right| = \frac{16}{\sqrt{50}\sqrt{6}} = \frac{16}{5\sqrt{2}\sqrt{6}} = \frac{8\sqrt{3}}{15}$$

Hence, the required angle is $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{8\sqrt{3}}{15}\right)$.

11.5 Shortest Distance between Two Lines

If two lines in space intersect at a point, then the shortest distance between them is zero. Also, if two lines in space are parallel, then the shortest distance between them will be the perpendicular distance, i.e. the length of the perpendicular drawn from a point on one line onto the other line.

Further, in a space, there are lines which are neither intersecting nor parallel. In fact, such pair of lines are *non coplanar* and are called *skew lines*. For example, let us consider a room of size 1, 3, 2 units along *x*, *y* and *z*-axes respectively Fig 11.5.

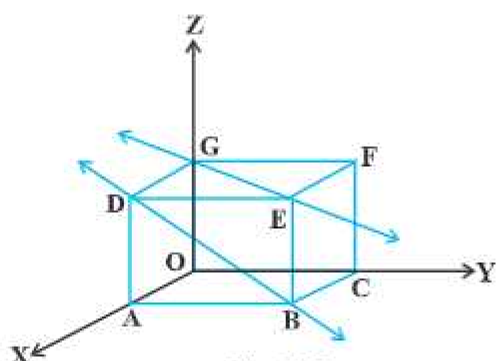


Fig 11.5

The line GE that goes diagonally across the ceiling and the line DB passes through one corner of the ceiling directly above A and goes diagonally down the wall. These lines are skew because they are not parallel and also never meet.

By the shortest distance between two lines we mean the join of a point in one line with one point on the other line so that the length of the segment so obtained is the smallest.

For skew lines, the line of the shortest distance will be perpendicular to both the lines.

11.5.1 *Distance between two skew lines*

We now determine the shortest distance between two skew lines in the following way: Let l_1 and l_2 be two skew lines with equations (Fig. 11.6)

$$\vec{r} = \vec{a}_1 + \lambda \vec{b}_1 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

and
$$\vec{r} = \vec{a}_2 + \mu \vec{b}_2 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Take any point S on l_1 with position vector $\vec{a}_1$ and T on l_2, with position vector $\vec{a}_2$. Then the magnitude of the shortest distance vector will be equal to that of the projection of ST along the direction of the line of shortest distance (See 10.6.2).

If $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ is the shortest distance vector between l_1 and l_2, then it being perpendicular to both $\vec{b}_1$ and $\vec{b}_2$, the unit vector $\hat{n}$ along $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ would therefore be

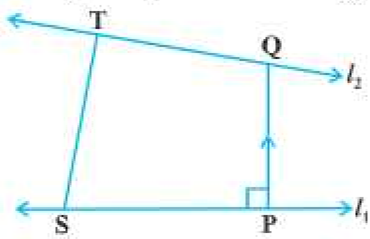


Fig 11.6

$$\hat{n} = \frac{\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2}{|\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2|} \quad \text{... (3)}$$

Then
$$\overrightarrow{PQ} = d\ \hat{n}$$

where, d is the magnitude of the shortest distance vector. Let θ be the angle between $\overrightarrow{ST}$ and $\overrightarrow{PQ}$. Then

$$PQ = ST\ |\cos\theta|$$

But
$$\cos\theta = \left|\frac{\overrightarrow{PQ}\cdot\overrightarrow{ST}}{|\overrightarrow{PQ}|\,|\overrightarrow{ST}|}\right|$$

$$= \left|\frac{d\ \hat{n}\cdot(\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{d\ ST}\right| \qquad (\text{since } \overrightarrow{ST} = \vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)$$

$$= \left|\frac{(\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2)\cdot(\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{ST\ |\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2|}\right| \qquad \text{[From (3)]}$$

Hence, the required shortest distance is

$$d = PQ = ST\,|\cos\theta|$$

or

$$d = \left|\frac{(\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2)\cdot(\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{|\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2|}\right|$$

Cartesian form

The shortest distance between the lines

$$l_1 : \frac{x - x_1}{a_1} = \frac{y - y_1}{b_1} = \frac{z - z_1}{c_1}$$

and

$$l_2 : \frac{x - x_2}{a_2} = \frac{y - y_2}{b_2} = \frac{z - z_2}{c_2}$$

is

$$\left|\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_2 - x_1 & y_2 - y_1 & z_2 - z_1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}}{\sqrt{(b_1c_2 - b_2c_1)^2 + (c_1a_2 - c_2a_1)^2 + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)^2}}\right|$$

11.5.2 Distance between parallel lines

If two lines l_1 and l_2 are parallel, then they are coplanar. Let the lines be given by

$$\vec{r} = \vec{a}_1 + \lambda\vec{b} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

and

$$\vec{r} = \vec{a}_2 + \mu\,\vec{b} \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

where, $\vec{a}_1$ is the position vector of a point S on l_1 and $\vec{a}_2$ is the position vector of a point T on l_2 Fig 11.7.

As l_1, l_2 are coplanar, if the foot of the perpendicular from T on the line l_1 is P, then the distance between the lines l_1 and l_2 = |TP|.

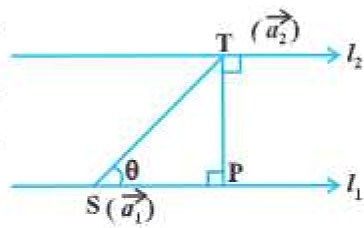


Fig 11.7

Let θ be the angle between the vectors $\overrightarrow{ST}$ and $\vec{b}$. Then

$$\vec{b} \times \overrightarrow{ST} = (|\vec{b}|\,|\overrightarrow{ST}|\sin\theta)\,\hat{n} \;\ldots \qquad (3)$$

where $\hat{n}$ is the unit vector perpendicular to the plane of the lines l_1 and l_2

But

$$\overrightarrow{ST} = \vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1$$

Therefore, from (3), we get

$$\vec{b} \times (\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1) = \vec{b}\,|\,\text{PT}\,\hat{n} \qquad \text{(since PT = ST sin θ)}$$

i.e., $$|\vec{b} \times (\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)| = |\vec{b}|\,\text{PT}\cdot 1 \qquad (\text{as } |\hat{n}| = 1)$$

Hence, the distance between the given parallel lines is

$$d = |\overrightarrow{\text{PT}}| = \left|\frac{\vec{b} \times (\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{|\vec{b}|}\right|$$

Example 9 Find the shortest distance between the lines l_1 and l_2 whose vector equations are

$$\vec{r} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + \lambda\,(2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}) \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

and $$\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k} + \mu\,(3\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}) \qquad \text{... (2)}$$

Solution Comparing (1) and (2) with $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_1 + \lambda\,\vec{b}_1$ and $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_2 + \mu\,\vec{b}_2$ respectively,

we get $$\vec{a}_1 = \hat{i} + \hat{j},\ \vec{b}_1 = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}$$

$$\vec{a}_2 = 2\hat{i} + \hat{j} - \hat{k} \text{ and } \vec{b}_2 = 3\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$$

Therefore $$\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1 = \hat{i} - \hat{k}$$

and $$\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2 = (2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k}) \times (3\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \\ 3 & -5 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = 3\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 7\hat{k}$$

So $$|\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2| = \sqrt{9 + 1 + 49} = \sqrt{59}$$

Hence, the shortest distance between the given lines is given by

$$d = \left|\frac{(\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2)\,.\,(\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{|\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2|}\right| = \frac{|3 - 0 + 7|}{\sqrt{59}} = \frac{10}{\sqrt{59}}$$

Example 10 Find the distance between the lines l_1 and l_2 given by

$$\vec{r} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k} + \lambda\,(2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 6\hat{k})$$

and $$\vec{r} = 3\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k} + \mu\,(2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 6\hat{k})$$

Solution The two lines are parallel (Why?) We have

$$\vec{a}_1 = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k},\ \vec{a}_2 = 3\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} - 5\hat{k} \text{ and } \vec{b} = 2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 6\hat{k}$$

Therefore, the distance between the lines is given by

$$d = \left| \frac{\vec{b} \times (\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{|\vec{b}|} \right| = \left| \frac{\begin{vmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ 2 & 3 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix}}{\sqrt{4+9+36}} \right|$$

or $$= \frac{|-9\hat{i} + 14\hat{j} - 4\hat{k}|}{\sqrt{49}} = \frac{\sqrt{293}}{\sqrt{49}} = \frac{\sqrt{293}}{7}$$

EXERCISE 11.2

1. Show that the three lines with direction cosines
$\frac{12}{13}, \frac{-3}{13}, \frac{-4}{13};\ \frac{4}{13}, \frac{12}{13}, \frac{3}{13};\ \frac{3}{13}, \frac{-4}{13}, \frac{12}{13}$ are mutually perpendicular.
2. Show that the line through the points (1, – 1, 2), (3, 4, – 2) is perpendicular to the line through the points (0, 3, 2) and (3, 5, 6).
3. Show that the line through the points (4, 7, 8), (2, 3, 4) is parallel to the line through the points (– 1, – 2, 1), (1, 2, 5).
4. Find the equation of the line which passes through the point (1, 2, 3) and is parallel to the vector $3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 2\hat{k}$.
5. Find the equation of the line in vector and in cartesian form that passes through the point with position vector $2\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ and is in the direction $\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - \hat{k}$.
6. Find the cartesian equation of the line which passes through the point (– 2, 4, – 5) and parallel to the line given by $\frac{x+3}{3} = \frac{y-4}{5} = \frac{z+8}{6}$.
7. The cartesian equation of a line is $\frac{x-5}{3} = \frac{y+4}{7} = \frac{z-6}{2}$. Write its vector form.
8. Find the angle between the following pairs of lines:
   (i) $\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} + \hat{k} + \lambda(3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 6\hat{k})$ and
   $\vec{r} = 7\hat{i} - 6\hat{k} + \mu(\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$

(ii) $\vec{r} = 3\hat{i} + \hat{j} - 2\hat{k} + \lambda(\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 2\hat{k})$ and

$\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} - 56\hat{k} + \mu(3\hat{i} - 5\hat{j} - 4\hat{k})$

9. Find the angle between the following pair of lines:

(i) $\frac{x-2}{2} = \frac{y-1}{5} = \frac{z+3}{-3}$ and $\frac{x+2}{-1} = \frac{y-4}{8} = \frac{z-5}{4}$

(ii) $\frac{x}{2} = \frac{y}{2} = \frac{z}{1}$ and $\frac{x-5}{4} = \frac{y-2}{1} = \frac{z-3}{8}$

10. Find the values of p so that the lines $\frac{1-x}{3} = \frac{7y-14}{2p} = \frac{z-3}{2}$

and $\frac{7-7x}{3p} = \frac{y-5}{1} = \frac{6-z}{5}$ are at right angles.

11. Show that the lines $\frac{x-5}{7} = \frac{y+2}{-5} = \frac{z}{1}$ and $\frac{x}{1} = \frac{y}{2} = \frac{z}{3}$ are perpendicular to each other.

12. Find the shortest distance between the lines

$\vec{r} = (\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}) + \lambda(\hat{i} - \hat{j} + \hat{k})$ and

$\vec{r} = 2\hat{i} - \hat{j} - \hat{k} + \mu(2\hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$

13. Find the shortest distance between the lines

$\frac{x+1}{7} = \frac{y+1}{-6} = \frac{z+1}{1}$ and $\frac{x-3}{1} = \frac{y-5}{-2} = \frac{z-7}{1}$

14. Find the shortest distance between the lines whose vector equations are

$\vec{r} = (\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}) + \lambda(\hat{i} - 3\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$

and $\vec{r} = 4\hat{i} + 5\hat{j} + 6\hat{k} + \mu(2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + \hat{k})$

15. Find the shortest distance between the lines whose vector equations are

$\vec{r} = (1-t)\hat{i} + (t-2)\hat{j} + (3-2t)\hat{k}$ and

$\vec{r} = (s+1)\hat{i} + (2s-1)\hat{j} - (2s+1)\hat{k}$

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 11

1. Find the angle between the lines whose direction ratios are a, b, c and $b - c, c - a, a - b$.

2. Find the equation of a line parallel to x-axis and passing through the origin.

3. If the lines $\frac{x-1}{-3}=\frac{y-2}{2k}=\frac{z-3}{2}$ and $\frac{x-1}{3k}=\frac{y-1}{1}=\frac{z-6}{-5}$ are perpendicular, find the value of k.

4. Find the shortest distance between lines $\vec{r}=6\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+2\hat{k}+\lambda(\hat{i}-2\hat{j}+2\hat{k})$ and $\vec{r}=-4\hat{i}-\hat{k}+\mu(3\hat{i}-2\hat{j}-2\hat{k})$.

5. Find the vector equation of the line passing through the point (1, 2, – 4) and perpendicular to the two lines:

$$\frac{x-8}{3}=\frac{y+19}{-16}=\frac{z-10}{7} \text{ and } \frac{x-15}{3}=\frac{y-29}{8}=\frac{z-5}{-5}.$$

Summary

- **Direction cosines of a line** are the cosines of the angles made by the line with the positive directions of the coordinate axes.
- If l, m, n are the direction cosines of a line, then $l^2+m^2+n^2=1$.
- Direction cosines of a line joining two points $P(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $Q(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ are

  $$\frac{x_2-x_1}{PQ}, \frac{y_2-y_1}{PQ}, \frac{z_2-z_1}{PQ}$$

  where $PQ = \sqrt{(x_2-x_1)^2+(y_2-y_1)^2+(z_2-z_1)^2}$
- **Direction ratios of a line** are the numbers which are proportional to the direction cosines of a line.
- If l, m, n are the direction cosines and a, b, c are the direction ratios of a line then

  $$l=\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2+c^2}};\ m=\frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2+c^2}};\ n=\frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2+b^2+c^2}}$$
- **Skew lines** are lines in space which are neither parallel nor intersecting. They lie in different planes.
- **Angle between skew lines** is the angle between two intersecting lines drawn from any point (preferably through the origin) parallel to each of the skew lines.
- If l_1, m_1, n_1 and l_2, m_2, n_2 are the direction cosines of two lines; and θ is the acute angle between the two lines; then

  $$\cos\theta = |l_1l_2+m_1m_2+n_1n_2|$$

- If a_1, b_1, c_1 and a_2, b_2, c_2 are the direction ratios of two lines and θ is the acute angle between the two lines; then

$$\cos\theta = \left|\frac{a_1 a_2 + b_1 b_2 + c_1 c_2}{\sqrt{a_1^2 + b_1^2 + c_1^2}\ \sqrt{a_2^2 + b_2^2 + c_2^2}}\right|$$

- Vector equation of a line that passes through the given point whose position vector is $\vec{a}$ and parallel to a given vector $\vec{b}$ is $\vec{r} = \vec{a} + \lambda\,\vec{b}$.
- Equation of a line through a point (x_1, y_1, z_1) and having direction cosines l, m, n is

$$\frac{x - x_1}{l} = \frac{y - y_1}{m} = \frac{z - z_1}{n}$$

- The vector equation of a line which passes through two points whose position vectors are $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ is $\vec{r} = \vec{a} + \lambda\,(\vec{b} - \vec{a})$.
- If θ is the acute angle between $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_1 + \lambda\vec{b}_1$ and $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_2 + \lambda\vec{b}_2$, then

$$\cos\theta = \left|\frac{\vec{b}_1 \cdot \vec{b}_2}{|\vec{b}_1|\,|\vec{b}_2|}\right|$$

- If $\dfrac{x - x_1}{l_1} = \dfrac{y - y_1}{m_1} = \dfrac{z - z_1}{n_1}$ and $\dfrac{x - x_2}{l_2} = \dfrac{y - y_2}{m_2} = \dfrac{z - z_2}{n_2}$

  are the equations of two lines, then the acute angle between the two lines is given by $\cos\theta = |l_1 l_2 + m_1 m_2 + n_1 n_2|$.
- Shortest distance between two skew lines is the line segment perpendicular to both the lines.
- Shortest distance between $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_1 + \lambda\,\vec{b}_1$ and $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_2 + \mu\,\vec{b}_2$ is

$$\left|\frac{(\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2)\cdot(\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{|\vec{b}_1 \times \vec{b}_2|}\right|$$

- Shortest distance between the lines: $\dfrac{x - x_1}{a_1} = \dfrac{y - y_1}{b_1} = \dfrac{z - z_1}{c_1}$ and

$$\frac{x - x_2}{a_2} = \frac{y - y_2}{b_2} = \frac{z - z_2}{c_2}$$ is

$$\frac{\begin{vmatrix} x_2 - x_1 & y_2 - y_1 & z_2 - z_1 \\ a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}}{\sqrt{(b_1c_2 - b_2c_1)^2 + (c_1a_2 - c_2a_1)^2 + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)^2}}$$

- Distance between parallel lines $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_1 + \lambda \vec{b}$ and $\vec{r} = \vec{a}_2 + \mu \vec{b}$ is

$$\left| \frac{\vec{b} \times (\vec{a}_2 - \vec{a}_1)}{|\vec{b}|} \right|$$

Chapter 12

LINEAR PROGRAMMING

❖ *The mathematical experience of the student is incomplete if he never had the opportunity to solve a problem invented by himself. – G. POLYA* ❖

12.1 Introduction

L. Kantorovich

In earlier classes, we have discussed systems of linear equations and their applications in day to day problems. In Class XI, we have studied linear inequalities and systems of linear inequalities in two variables and their solutions by graphical method. Many applications in mathematics involve systems of inequalities/equations. In this chapter, we shall apply the systems of linear inequalities/equations to solve some real life problems of the type as given below:

A furniture dealer deals in only two items–tables and chairs. He has Rs 50,000 to invest and has storage space of at most 60 pieces. A table costs Rs 2500 and a chair Rs 500. He estimates that from the sale of one table, he can make a profit of Rs 250 and that from the sale of one chair a profit of Rs 75. He wants to know how many tables and chairs he should buy from the available money so as to maximise his total profit, assuming that he can sell all the items which he buys.

Such type of problems which seek to maximise (or, minimise) profit (or, cost) form a general class of problems called **optimisation problems**. Thus, an optimisation problem may involve finding maximum profit, minimum cost, or minimum use of resources etc.

A special but a very important class of optimisation problems is **linear programming problem.** The above stated optimisation problem is an example of linear programming problem. Linear programming problems are of much interest because of their wide applicability in industry, commerce, management science etc.

In this chapter, we shall study some linear programming problems and their solutions by graphical method only, though there are many other methods also to solve such problems.

12.2 Linear Programming Problem and its Mathematical Formulation

We begin our discussion with the above example of furniture dealer which will further lead to a mathematical formulation of the problem in two variables. In this example, we observe

(i) The dealer can invest his money in buying tables or chairs or combination thereof. Further he would earn different profits by following different investment strategies.

(ii) There are certain **overriding conditions** or **constraints** viz., his investment is limited to a **maximum** of Rs 50,000 and so is his storage space which is for a maximum of 60 pieces.

Suppose he decides to buy tables only and no chairs, so he can buy 50000 ÷ 2500, i.e., 20 tables. His profit in this case will be Rs (250 × 20), i.e., **Rs 5000.**

Suppose he chooses to buy chairs only and no tables. With his capital of Rs 50,000, he can buy 50000 ÷ 500, i.e. 100 chairs. But he can store only 60 pieces. Therefore, he is forced to buy only 60 chairs which will give him a total profit of Rs (60 × 75), i.e., **Rs 4500**.

There are many other possibilities, for instance, he may choose to buy 10 tables and 50 chairs, as he can store only 60 pieces. Total profit in this case would be Rs (10 × 250 + 50 × 75), i.e., **Rs 6250** and so on.

We, thus, find that the dealer can invest his money in different ways and he would earn different profits by following different investment strategies.

Now the problem is : How should he invest his money in order to get maximum profit? To answer this question, let us try to formulate the problem mathematically.

12.2.1 *Mathematical formulation of the problem*

Let x be the number of tables and y be the number of chairs that the dealer buys. Obviously, x and y must be non-negative, i.e.,

$$x \geq 0 \quad \text{(Non-negative constraints)} \quad \ldots (1)$$
$$y \geq 0 \quad \ldots (2)$$

The dealer is constrained by the maximum amount he can invest (Here it is Rs 50,000) and by the maximum number of items he can store (Here it is 60).

Stated mathematically,

$$2500x + 500y \leq 50000 \text{ (investment constraint)}$$

or $$5x + y \leq 100 \quad \ldots (3)$$

and $$x + y \leq 60 \text{ (storage constraint)} \quad \ldots (4)$$

The dealer wants to invest in such a way so as to maximise his profit, say, Z which stated as a function of x and y is given by

$Z = 250x + 75y$ (called *objective function*) ... (5)

Mathematically, the given problems now reduces to:

Maximise $Z = 250x + 75y$

subject to the constraints:

$$5x + y \leq 100$$

$$x + y \leq 60$$

$$x \geq 0, \ y \geq 0$$

So, we have to maximise the linear function Z subject to certain conditions determined by a set of linear inequalities with variables as non-negative. There are also some other problems where we have to minimise a linear function subject to certain conditions determined by a set of linear inequalities with variables as non-negative. Such problems are called **Linear Programming Problems.**

Thus, a Linear Programming Problem is one that is concerned with finding the **optimal value** (maximum or minimum value) of a linear function (called **objective function**) of several variables (say x and y), subject to the conditions that the variables are **non-negative** and satisfy a set of linear inequalities (called **linear constraints).** The term **linear** implies that all the mathematical relations used in the problem are **linear relations** while the term programming refers to the method of determining a particular **programme** or plan of action.

Before we proceed further, we now formally define some terms (which have been used above) which we shall be using in the linear programming problems:

Objective function Linear function $Z = ax + by$, where a, b are constants, which has to be maximised or minimized is called a linear **objective function.**

In the above example, $Z = 250x + 75y$ is a linear objective function. Variables x and y are called **decision variables**.

Constraints The linear inequalities or equations or restrictions on the variables of a linear programming problem are called **constraints**. The conditions $x \geq 0$, $y \geq 0$ are called non-negative restrictions. In the above example, the set of inequalities (1) to (4) are **constraints**.

Optimisation problem A problem which seeks to maximise or minimise a linear function (say of two variables x and y) subject to certain constraints as determined by a set of linear inequalities is called an **optimisation problem**. Linear programming problems are special type of optimisation problems. The above problem of investing a given sum by the dealer in purchasing chairs and tables is an example of an optimisation problem as well as of a linear programming problem.

We will now discuss how to find solutions to a linear programming problem. In this chapter, we will be concerned only with the graphical method.

12.2.2 Graphical method of solving linear programming problems

In Class XI, we have learnt how to graph a system of linear inequalities involving two variables x and y and to find its solutions graphically. Let us refer to the problem of investment in tables and chairs discussed in Section 12.2. We will now solve this problem graphically. Let us graph the constraints stated as linear inequalities:

$$5x + y \leq 100 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

$$x + y \leq 60 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

$$x \geq 0 \quad \text{... (3)}$$

$$y \geq 0 \quad \text{... (4)}$$

The graph of this system (shaded region) consists of the points common to all half planes determined by the inequalities (1) to (4) (Fig 12.1). Each point in this region represents a **feasible choice** open to the dealer for investing in tables and chairs. The region, therefore, is called the **feasible region** for the problem. Every point of this region is called a **feasible solution** to the problem. Thus, we have,

Feasible region The common region determined by all the constraints including non-negative constraints $x, y \geq 0$ of a linear programming problem is called the **feasible region** (or solution region) for the problem. In Fig 12.1, the region OABC (shaded) is the feasible region for the problem. The region other than feasible region is called an **infeasible region**.

Feasible solutions Points within and on the boundary of the feasible region represent feasible solutions of the constraints. In Fig 12.1, every point within and on the boundary of the feasible region OABC represents feasible solution to the problem. For example, the point (10, 50) is a feasible solution of the problem and so are the points (0, 60), (20, 0) etc.

Any point outside the feasible region is called an **infeasible solution.** For example, the point (25, 40) is an infeasible solution of the problem.

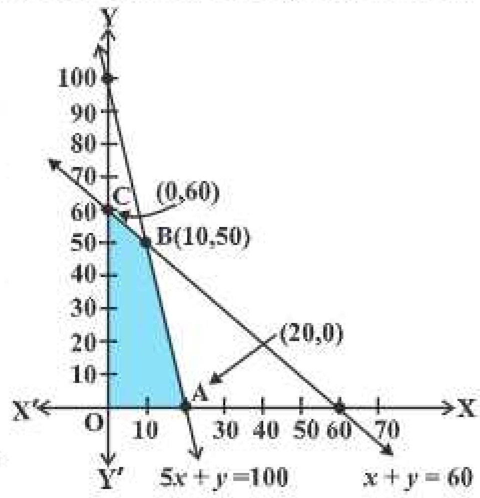


Fig 12.1

Optimal (feasible) solution: Any point in the feasible region that gives the optimal value (maximum or minimum) of the objective function is called an **optimal solution.**

Now, we see that every point in the feasible region OABC satisfies all the constraints as given in (1) to (4), and since there are **infinitely many points**, it is not evident how we should go about finding a point that gives a maximum value of the objective function $Z = 250x + 75y$. To handle this situation, we use the following theorems which are fundamental in solving linear programming problems. The proofs of these theorems are beyond the scope of the book.

Theorem 1 Let R be the feasible region (convex polygon) for a linear programming problem and let $Z = ax + by$ be the objective function. When Z has an optimal value (maximum or minimum), where the variables x and y are subject to constraints described by linear inequalities, this optimal value must occur at a corner point* (vertex) of the feasible region.

Theorem 2 Let R be the feasible region for a linear programming problem, and let $Z = ax + by$ be the objective function. If R is **bounded****, then the objective function Z has both a **maximum** and a **minimum** value on R and each of these occurs at a corner point (vertex) of R.

Remark If R is **unbounded**, then a maximum or a minimum value of the objective function may not exist. However, if it exists, it must occur at a corner point of R. (By Theorem 1).

In the above example, the corner points (vertices) of the bounded (feasible) region are: O, A, B and C and it is easy to find their coordinates as (0, 0), (20, 0), (10, 50) and (0, 60) respectively. Let us now compute the values of Z at these points.

We have

Vertex of the Feasible Region	Corresponding value of Z (in Rs)	
O (0,0)	0	
C (0,60)	4500	
B (10,50)	**6250** ⟵	Maximum
A (20,0)	5000	

* A corner point of a feasible region is a point in the region which is the intersection of two boundary lines.

** A feasible region of a system of linear inequalities is said to be bounded if it can be enclosed within a circle. Otherwise, it is called unbounded. Unbounded means that the feasible region does extend indefinitely in any direction.

We observe that the maximum profit to the dealer results from the investment strategy (10, 50), i.e. buying 10 tables and 50 chairs.

This method of solving linear programming problem is referred as **Corner Point Method**. The method comprises of the following steps:

1. Find the feasible region of the linear programming problem and determine its corner points (vertices) either by inspection or by solving the two equations of the lines intersecting at that point.
2. Evaluate the objective function $Z = ax + by$ at each corner point. Let M and m, respectively denote the largest and smallest values of these points.
3. (i) When the feasible region is **bounded**, M and m are the maximum and minimum values of Z.

   (ii) In case, the feasible region is **unbounded**, we have:
4. (a) M is the maximum value of Z, if the open half plane determined by $ax + by > M$ has no point in common with the feasible region. Otherwise, Z has no maximum value.

   (b) Similarly, m is the minimum value of Z, if the open half plane determined by $ax + by < m$ has no point in common with the feasible region. Otherwise, Z has no minimum value.

We will now illustrate these steps of Corner Point Method by considering some examples:

Example 1 Solve the following linear programming problem graphically:

Maximise $Z = 4x + y$ ... (1)

subject to the constraints:

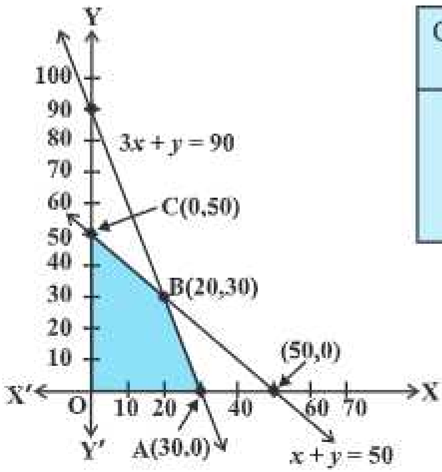
$$x + y \leq 50 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

$$3x + y \leq 90 \quad \text{... (3)}$$

$$x \geq 0, y \geq 0 \quad \text{... (4)}$$

Solution The shaded region in Fig 12.2 is the feasible region determined by the system of constraints (2) to (4). We observe that the feasible region OABC is **bounded.** So, we now use Corner Point Method to determine the maximum value of Z.

The coordinates of the corner points O, A, B and C are (0, 0), (30, 0), (20, 30) and (0, 50) respectively. Now we evaluate Z at each corner point.



Corner Point	Corresponding value of Z	
(0, 0)	0	
(30, 0)	**120** ←	Maximum
(20, 30)	110	
(0, 50)	50	

Fig 12.2

Hence, maximum value of Z is 120 at the point (30, 0).

Example 2 Solve the following linear programming problem graphically:

Minimise $Z = 200x + 500y$ ... (1)

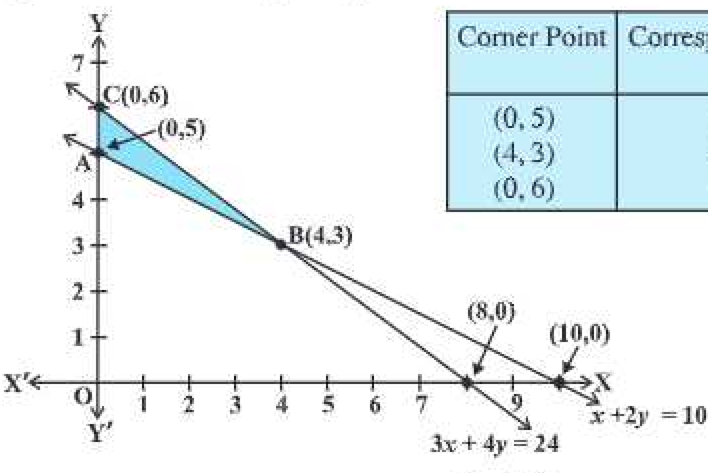
subject to the constraints:

$$x + 2y \geq 10 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

$$3x + 4y \leq 24 \quad \text{... (3)}$$

$$x \geq 0, y \geq 0 \quad \text{... (4)}$$

Solution The shaded region in Fig 12.3 is the feasible region ABC determined by the system of constraints (2) to (4), which is **bounded**. The coordinates of corner points



Corner Point	Corresponding value of Z	
(0, 5)	2500	
(4, 3)	**2300** ←	Minimum
(0, 6)	3000	

Fig 12.3

A, B and C are (0,5), (4,3) and (0,6) respectively. Now we evaluate Z = 200x + 500y at these points.

Hence, minimum value of Z is 2300 attained at the point (4, 3)

Example 3 Solve the following problem graphically:

Minimise and Maximise $Z = 3x + 9y$ ... (1)

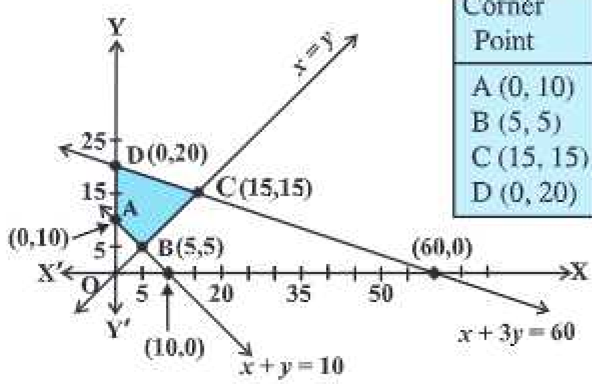
subject to the constraints: $x + 3y \leq 60$ ... (2)

$x + y \geq 10$ ... (3)

$x \leq y$ ... (4)

$x \geq 0, y \geq 0$ ... (5)

Solution First of all, let us graph the feasible region of the system of linear inequalities (2) to (5). The feasible region ABCD is shown in the Fig 12.4. Note that the region is bounded. The coordinates of the corner points A, B, C and D are (0, 10), (5, 5), (15,15) and (0, 20) respectively.



Corner Point	Corresponding value of $Z = 3x + 9y$	
A (0, 10)	90	
B (5, 5)	**60** ←	Minimum
C (15, 15)	**180** } ←	Maximum (Multiple optimal solutions)
D (0, 20)	**180**	

Fig 12.4

We now find the minimum and maximum value of Z. From the table, we find that the minimum value of Z is 60 at the point B (5, 5) of the feasible region.

The maximum value of Z on the feasible region occurs at the two corner points C (15, 15) and D (0, 20) and it is 180 in each case.

Remark Observe that in the above example, the problem has multiple optimal solutions at the corner points C and D, i.e. the both points produce same maximum value 180. In such cases, you can see that every point on the line segment CD joining the two corner points C and D also give the same maximum value. Same is also true in the case if the two points produce same minimum value.

Example 4 Determine graphically the minimum value of the objective function

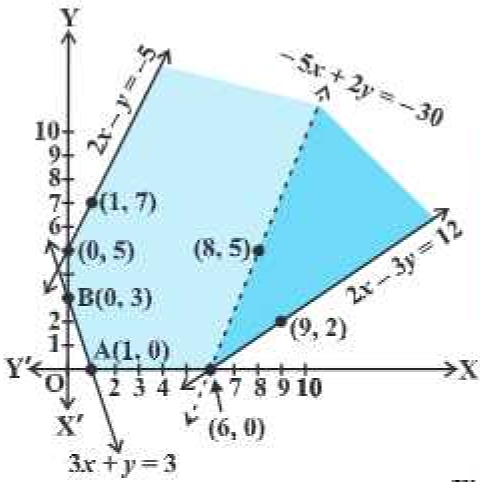
$$Z = -50x + 20y \quad \text{... (1)}$$

subject to the constraints:

$$2x - y \geq -5 \quad \text{... (2)}$$
$$3x + y \geq 3 \quad \text{... (3)}$$
$$2x - 3y \leq 12 \quad \text{... (4)}$$
$$x \geq 0, y \geq 0 \quad \text{... (5)}$$

Solution First of all, let us graph the feasible region of the system of inequalities (2) to (5). The feasible region (shaded) is shown in the Fig 12.5. Observe that the feasible region is **unbounded**.

We now evaluate Z at the corner points.



Corner Point	$Z = -50x + 20y$
(0, 5)	100
(0, 3)	**60**
(1, 0)	**–50**
(6, 0)	**– 300** ⟵ smallest

Fig 12.5

From this table, we find that – 300 is the smallest value of Z at the corner point (6, 0). Can we say that minimum value of Z is – 300? Note that if the region would have been bounded, this smallest value of Z is the minimum value of Z (Theorem 2). But here we see that the feasible region is unbounded. Therefore, – 300 may or may not be the minimum value of Z. To decide this issue, we graph the inequality

$$-50x + 20y < -300 \text{ (see Step 3(ii) of corner Point Method.)}$$

i.e., $$-5x + 2y < -30$$

and check whether the resulting open half plane has points in common with feasible region or not. If it has common points, then –300 will not be the minimum value of Z. Otherwise, –300 will be the minimum value of Z.

As shown in the Fig 12.5, it has common points. Therefore, Z = –50 x + 20 y has no minimum value subject to the given constraints.

In the above example, can you say whether z = – 50 x + 20 y has the maximum value 100 at (0,5)? For this, check whether the graph of $-50x + 20y > 100$ has points in common with the feasible region. (Why?)

Example 5 Minimise Z = 3x + 2y

subject to the constraints:

$$x + y \geq 8 \quad \text{... (1)}$$

$$3x + 5y \leq 15 \quad \text{... (2)}$$

$$x \geq 0,\ y \geq 0 \quad \text{... (3)}$$

Solution Let us graph the inequalities (1) to (3) (Fig 12.6). Is there any feasible region? Why is so?

From Fig 12.6, you can see that there is no point satisfying all the constraints simultaneously. Thus, the problem is having no feasible region and hence no feasible solution.

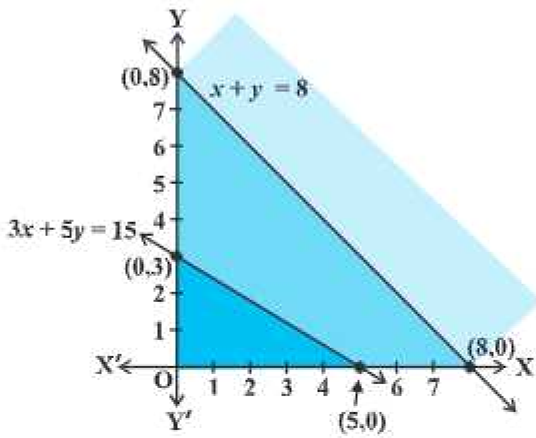


Fig 12.6

Remarks From the examples which we have discussed so far, we notice some general features of linear programming problems:

(i) The feasible region is always a convex region.

(ii) The maximum (or minimum) solution of the objective function occurs at the vertex (corner) of the feasible region. If two corner points produce the same maximum (or minimum) value of the objective function, then every point on the line segment joining these points will also give the same maximum (or minimum) value.

EXERCISE 12.1

Solve the following Linear Programming Problems graphically:

1. Maximise Z = $3x + 4y$

   subject to the constraints : $x + y \leq 4$, $x \geq 0$, $y \geq 0$.

2. Minimise $Z = -3x + 4y$

   subject to $x + 2y \leq 8$, $3x + 2y \leq 12$, $x \geq 0$, $y \geq 0$.

3. Maximise $Z = 5x + 3y$

   subject to $3x + 5y \leq 15$, $5x + 2y \leq 10$, $x \geq 0$, $y \geq 0$.

4. Minimise $Z = 3x + 5y$

   such that $x + 3y \geq 3$, $x + y \geq 2$, $x, y \geq 0$.

5. Maximise $Z = 3x + 2y$

   subject to $x + 2y \leq 10$, $3x + y \leq 15$, $x, y \geq 0$.

6. Minimise $Z = x + 2y$

   subject to $2x + y \geq 3$, $x + 2y \geq 6$, $x, y \geq 0$.

Show that the minimum of Z occurs at more than two points.

7. Minimise and Maximise $Z = 5x + 10y$

   subject to $x + 2y \leq 120$, $x + y \geq 60$, $x - 2y \geq 0$, $x, y \geq 0$.

8. Minimise and Maximise $Z = x + 2y$

   subject to $x + 2y \geq 100$, $2x - y \leq 0$, $2x + y \leq 200$; $x, y \geq 0$.

9. Maximise $Z = -x + 2y$, subject to the constraints:

   $x \geq 3$, $x + y \geq 5$, $x + 2y \geq 6$, $y \geq 0$.

10. Maximise $Z = x + y$, subject to $x - y \leq -1$, $-x + y \leq 0$, $x, y \geq 0$.

Summary

- A linear programming problem is one that is concerned with finding the optimal value (maximum or minimum) of a linear function of several variables (called **objective function**) subject to the conditions that the variables are non-negative and satisfy a set of linear inequalities (called linear **constraints**). Variables are sometimes called **decision variables** and are **non-negative.**

Historical Note

In the World War II, when the war operations had to be planned to economise expenditure, maximise damage to the enemy, linear programming problems came to the forefront.

The first problem in linear programming was formulated in 1941 by the Russian mathematician, L. Kantorovich and the American economist, F. L. Hitchcock, both of whom worked at it independently of each other. This was the well known *transportation problem*. In 1945, an English economist, G.Stigler, described yet another linear programming problem – that of determining an *optimal diet*.

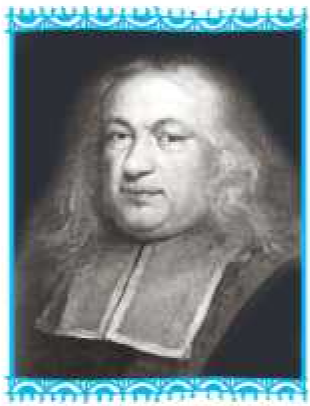
In 1947, the American economist, G. B. Dantzig suggested an efficient method known as the simplex method which is an iterative procedure to solve any linear programming problem in a finite number of steps.

L. Katorovich and American mathematical economist, T. C. Koopmans were awarded the nobel prize in the year 1975 in economics for their pioneering work in linear programming. With the advent of computers and the necessary softwares, it has become possible to apply linear programming model to increasingly complex problems in many areas.

PROBABILITY

❖ *The theory of probabilities is simply the Science of logic quantitatively treated. – C.S. PEIRCE* ❖

13.1 Introduction



Pierre de Fermat
(1601-1665)

In earlier Classes, we have studied the probability as a measure of uncertainty of events in a random experiment. We discussed the axiomatic approach formulated by Russian Mathematician, A.N. Kolmogorov (1903-1987) and treated probability as a function of outcomes of the experiment. We have also established equivalence between the axiomatic theory and the classical theory of probability in case of equally likely outcomes. On the basis of this relationship, we obtained probabilities of events associated with discrete sample spaces. We have also studied the addition rule of probability. In this chapter, we shall discuss the important concept of conditional probability of an event given that another event has occurred, which will be helpful in understanding the Bayes' theorem, multiplication rule of probability and independence of events. We shall also learn an important concept of random variable and its probability distribution and also the mean and variance of a probability distribution. In the last section of the chapter, we shall study an important discrete probability distribution called Binomial distribution. Throughout this chapter, we shall take up the experiments having equally likely outcomes, unless stated otherwise.

13.2 Conditional Probability

Uptill now in probability, we have discussed the methods of finding the probability of events. If we have two events from the same sample space, does the information about the occurrence of one of the events affect the probability of the other event? Let us try to answer this question by taking up a random experiment in which the outcomes are equally likely to occur.

Consider the experiment of tossing three fair coins. The sample space of the experiment is

$$S = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH, HTT, THT, TTH, TTT\}$$

Since the coins are fair, we can assign the probability $\frac{1}{8}$ to each sample point. Let E be the event 'at least two heads appear' and F be the event 'first coin shows tail'. Then

$$E = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH\}$$

and $$F = \{THH, THT, TTH, TTT\}$$

Therefore $$P(E) = P(\{HHH\}) + P(\{HHT\}) + P(\{HTH\}) + P(\{THH\})$$

$$= \frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}=\frac{1}{2} \text{ (Why ?)}$$

and $$P(F) = P(\{THH\}) + P(\{THT\}) + P(\{TTH\}) + P(\{TTT\})$$

$$= \frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}+\frac{1}{8}=\frac{1}{2}$$

Also $$E \cap F = \{THH\}$$

with $$P(E \cap F) = P(\{THH\}) = \frac{1}{8}$$

Now, suppose we are given that the first coin shows tail, i.e. F occurs, then what is the probability of occurrence of E? With the information of occurrence of F, we are sure that the cases in which first coin does not result into a tail should not be considered while finding the probability of E. This information reduces our sample space from the set S to its subset F for the event E. In other words, the additional information really amounts to telling us that the situation may be considered as being that of a new random experiment for which the sample space consists of all those outcomes only which are favourable to the occurrence of the event F.

Now, the sample point of F which is favourable to event E is THH.

Thus, Probability of E considering F as the sample space = $\frac{1}{4}$,

or Probability of E given that the event F has occurred = $\frac{1}{4}$

This probability of the event E is called the *conditional probability of E given that F has already occurred*, and is denoted by P (E|F).

Thus $$P(E|F) = \frac{1}{4}$$

Note that the elements of F which favour the event E are the common elements of E and F, i.e. the sample points of $E \cap F$.

Thus, we can also write the conditional probability of E given that F has occurred as

$$P(E|F) = \frac{\text{Number of elementary events favourable to } E \cap F}{\text{Number of elementary events which are favourable to } F}$$

$$= \frac{n(E \cap F)}{n(F)}$$

Dividing the numerator and the denominator by total number of elementary events of the sample space, we see that P(E|F) can also be written as

$$P(E|F) = \frac{\frac{n(E \cap F)}{n(S)}}{\frac{n(F)}{n(S)}} = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} \qquad \text{... (1)}$$

Note that (1) is valid only when $P(F) \neq 0$ i.e., $F \neq \phi$ (Why?)

Thus, we can define the conditional probability as follows :

Definition 1 If E and F are two events associated with the same sample space of a random experiment, the conditional probability of the event E given that F has occurred, i.e. P (E|F) is given by

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} \text{ provided } P(F) \neq 0$$

13.2.1 *Properties of conditional probability*

Let E and F be events of a sample space S of an experiment, then we have

Property 1 $P(S|F) = P(F|F) = 1$

We know that

$$P(S|F) = \frac{P(S \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{P(F)}{P(F)} = 1$$

Also $$P(F|F) = \frac{P(F \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{P(F)}{P(F)} = 1$$

Thus $$P(S|F) = P(F|F) = 1$$

Property 2 *If A and B are any two events of a sample space S and F is an event of S such that $P(F) \neq 0$, then*

$$P((A \cup B)|F) = P(A|F) + P(B|F) - P((A \cap B)|F)$$

In particular, if A and B are disjoint events, then

$$P((A \cup B)|F) = P(A|F) + P(B|F)$$

We have

$$P((A \cup B)|F) = \frac{P[(A \cup B) \cap F]}{P(F)}$$

$$= \frac{P[(A \cap F) \cup (B \cap F)]}{P(F)}$$

(by distributive law of union of sets over intersection)

$$= \frac{P(A \cap F) + P(B \cap F) - P(A \cap B \cap F)}{P(F)}$$

$$= \frac{P(A \cap F)}{P(F)} + \frac{P(B \cap F)}{P(F)} - \frac{P[(A \cap B) \cap F]}{P(F)}$$

$$= P(A|F) + P(B|F) - P((A \cap B)|F)$$

When A and B are disjoint events, then

$$P((A \cap B)|F) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \quad P((A \cup B)|F) = P(A|F) + P(B|F)$$

Property 3 $P(E'|F) = 1 - P(E|F)$

From Property 1, we know that $P(S|F) = 1$

$\Rightarrow \quad P(E \cup E'|F) = 1 \quad$ since $S = E \cup E'$

$\Rightarrow \quad P(E|F) + P(E'|F) = 1 \quad$ since E and E′ are disjoint events

Thus, $\quad P(E'|F) = 1 - P(E|F)$

Let us now take up some examples.

Example 1 If $P(A) = \frac{7}{13}$, $P(B) = \frac{9}{13}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{4}{13}$, evaluate $P(A|B)$.

Solution We have $P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} = \frac{\frac{4}{13}}{\frac{9}{13}} = \frac{4}{9}$

Example 2 A family has two children. What is the probability that both the children are boys given that at least one of them is a boy ?

Solution Let b stand for boy and g for girl. The sample space of the experiment is

$$S = \{(b, b), (g, b), (b, g), (g, g)\}$$

Let E and F denote the following events :

E : 'both the children are boys'

F : 'at least one of the child is a boy'

Then $\quad E = \{(b,b)\}$ and $F = \{(b,b), (g,b), (b,g)\}$

Now $\quad E \cap F = \{(b,b)\}$

Thus $\quad P(F) = \frac{3}{4}$ and $P(E \cap F) = \frac{1}{4}$

Therefore $\quad P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{\frac{1}{4}}{\frac{3}{4}} = \frac{1}{3}$

Example 3 Ten cards numbered 1 to 10 are placed in a box, mixed up thoroughly and then one card is drawn randomly. If it is known that the number on the drawn card is more than 3, what is the probability that it is an even number?

Solution Let A be the event 'the number on the card drawn is even' and B be the event 'the number on the card drawn is greater than 3'. We have to find P(A|B).

Now, the sample space of the experiment is $S = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$

Then $\quad A = \{2, 4, 6, 8, 10\}$, $B = \{4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$

and $\quad A \cap B = \{4, 6, 8, 10\}$

Also $\quad P(A) = \frac{5}{10}$, $P(B) = \frac{7}{10}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{4}{10}$

Then $\quad P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} = \frac{\frac{4}{10}}{\frac{7}{10}} = \frac{4}{7}$

Example 4 In a school, there are 1000 students, out of which 430 are girls. It is known that out of 430, 10% of the girls study in class XII. What is the probability that a student chosen randomly studies in Class XII given that the chosen student is a girl?

Solution Let E denote the event that a student chosen randomly studies in Class XII and F be the event that the randomly chosen student is a girl. We have to find P (E|F).

Now $\quad P(F) = \frac{430}{1000} = 0.43$ and $P(E \cap F) = \frac{43}{1000} = 0.043$ (Why?)

Then $\quad P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{0.043}{0.43} = 0.1$

Example 5 A die is thrown three times. Events A and B are defined as below:

A : 4 on the third throw

B : 6 on the first and 5 on the second throw

Find the probability of A given that B has already occurred.

Solution The sample space has 216 outcomes.

Now
$$A = \begin{Bmatrix} (1,1,4) & (1,2,4) & ... (1,6,4) & (2,1,4) & (2,2,4) & ... & (2,6,4) \\ (3,1,4) & (3,2,4) & ... (3,6,4) & (4,1,4) & (4,2,4) & ... & (4,6,4) \\ (5,1,4) & (5,2,4) & ... (5,6,4) & (6,1,4) & (6,2,4) & ... & (6,6,4) \end{Bmatrix}$$

$$B = \{(6,5,1), (6,5,2), (6,5,3), (6,5,4), (6,5,5), (6,5,6)\}$$

and $\quad A \cap B = \{(6,5,4)\}$.

Now $\quad P(B) = \frac{6}{216}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{216}$

Then $\quad P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} = \frac{\frac{1}{216}}{\frac{6}{216}} = \frac{1}{6}$

Example 6 A die is thrown twice and the sum of the numbers appearing is observed to be 6. What is the conditional probability that the number 4 has appeared at least once?

Solution Let E be the event that 'number 4 appears at least once' and F be the event that 'the sum of the numbers appearing is 6'.

Then, $\quad E = \{(4,1), (4,2), (4,3), (4,4), (4,5), (4,6), (1,4), (2,4), (3,4), (5,4), (6,4)\}$

and $\quad F = \{(1,5), (2,4), (3,3), (4,2), (5,1)\}$

We have $\quad P(E) = \frac{11}{36}$ and $P(F) = \frac{5}{36}$

Also $\quad E \cap F = \{(2,4), (4,2)\}$

Therefore $\qquad P(E \cap F) = \frac{2}{36}$

Hence, the required probability

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{\frac{2}{36}}{\frac{5}{36}} = \frac{2}{5}$$

For the conditional probability discussed above, we have considered the elementary events of the experiment to be equally likely and the corresponding definition of the probability of an event was used. However, the same definition can also be used in the general case where the elementary events of the sample space are not equally likely, the probabilities $P(E \cap F)$ and $P(F)$ being calculated accordingly. Let us take up the following example.

Example 7 Consider the experiment of tossing a coin. If the coin shows head, toss it again but if it shows tail, then throw a die. Find the conditional probability of the event that 'the die shows a number greater than 4' given that 'there is at least one tail'.

Solution The outcomes of the experiment can be represented in following diagrammatic manner called the 'tree diagram'.

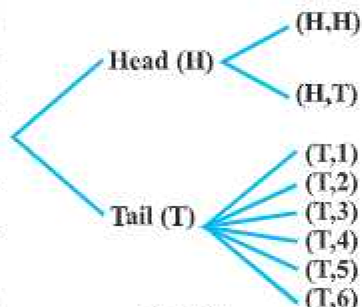


Fig 13.1

The sample space of the experiment may be described as

$$S = \{(H,H), (H,T), (T,1), (T,2), (T,3), (T,4), (T,5), (T,6)\}$$

where (H, H) denotes that both the tosses result into head and (T, i) denote the first toss result into a tail and the number i appeared on the die for $i = 1,2,3,4,5,6$. Thus, the probabilities assigned to the 8 elementary events

(H, H), (H, T), (T, 1), (T, 2), (T, 3) (T, 4), (T, 5), (T, 6)

are $\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{12}, \frac{1}{12}, \frac{1}{12}, \frac{1}{12}, \frac{1}{12}, \frac{1}{12}$ respectively which is clear from the Fig 13.2.

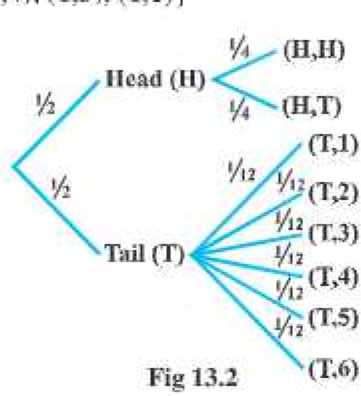


Fig 13.2

Let F be the event that 'there is at least one tail' and E be the event 'the die shows a number greater than 4'. Then

$$F = \{(H,T), (T,1), (T,2), (T,3), (T,4), (T,5), (T,6)\}$$

$$E = \{(T,5), (T,6)\} \text{ and } E \cap F = \{(T,5), (T,6)\}$$

Now
$$P(F) = P(\{(H,T)\}) + P(\{(T,1)\}) + P(\{(T,2)\}) + P(\{(T,3)\}) + P(\{(T,4)\}) + P(\{(T,5)\}) + P(\{(T,6)\})$$

$$= \frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{12}+\frac{1}{12}+\frac{1}{12}+\frac{1}{12}+\frac{1}{12}+\frac{1}{12}=\frac{3}{4}$$

and
$$P(E \cap F) = P(\{(T,5)\}) + P(\{(T,6)\}) = \frac{1}{12}+\frac{1}{12}=\frac{1}{6}$$

Hence
$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{\frac{1}{6}}{\frac{3}{4}} = \frac{2}{9}$$

EXERCISE 13.1

1. Given that E and F are events such that P(E) = 0.6, P(F) = 0.3 and P(E ∩ F) = 0.2, find P(E|F) and P(F|E)
2. Compute P(A|B), if P(B) = 0.5 and P (A ∩ B) = 0.32
3. If P(A) = 0.8, P (B) = 0.5 and P(B|A) = 0.4, find
   (i) P(A ∩ B) (ii) P(A|B) (iii) P(A ∪ B)
4. Evaluate P(A ∪ B), if 2P(A) = P(B) = $\frac{5}{13}$ and P(A|B) = $\frac{2}{5}$
5. If P(A) = $\frac{6}{11}$, P(B) = $\frac{5}{11}$ and P(A ∪ B) = $\frac{7}{11}$, find
   (i) P(A∩B) (ii) P(A|B) (iii) P(B|A)

Determine P(E|F) in Exercises 6 to 9.

6. A coin is tossed three times, where
   (i) E : head on third toss , F : heads on first two tosses
   (ii) E : at least two heads , F : at most two heads
   (iii) E : at most two tails , F : at least one tail

7. Two coins are tossed once, where

(i) E : tail appears on one coin, F : one coin shows head

(ii) E : no tail appears, F : no head appears

8. A die is thrown three times,

E : 4 appears on the third toss, F : 6 and 5 appears respectively on first two tosses

9. Mother, father and son line up at random for a family picture

E : son on one end, F : father in middle

10. A black and a red dice are rolled.

(a) Find the conditional probability of obtaining a sum greater than 9, given that the black die resulted in a 5.

(b) Find the conditional probability of obtaining the sum 8, given that the red die resulted in a number less than 4.

11. A fair die is rolled. Consider events $E = \{1,3,5\}$, $F = \{2,3\}$ and $G = \{2,3,4,5\}$ Find

(i) $P(E|F)$ and $P(F|E)$ (ii) $P(E|G)$ and $P(G|E)$

(iii) $P((E \cup F)|G)$ and $P((E \cap F)|G)$

12. Assume that each born child is equally likely to be a boy or a girl. If a family has two children, what is the conditional probability that both are girls given that (i) the youngest is a girl, (ii) at least one is a girl?

13. An instructor has a question bank consisting of 300 easy True / False questions, 200 difficult True / False questions, 500 easy multiple choice questions and 400 difficult multiple choice questions. If a question is selected at random from the question bank, what is the probability that it will be an easy question given that it is a multiple choice question?

14. Given that the two numbers appearing on throwing two dice are different. Find the probability of the event 'the sum of numbers on the dice is 4'.

15. Consider the experiment of throwing a die, if a multiple of 3 comes up, throw the die again and if any other number comes, toss a coin. Find the conditional probability of the event 'the coin shows a tail', given that 'at least one die shows a 3'.

In each of the Exercises 16 and 17 choose the correct answer:

16. If $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = 0$, then $P(A|B)$ is

(A) 0 (B) $\frac{1}{2}$

(C) not defined (D) 1

17. If A and B are events such that $P(A|B) = P(B|A)$, then

(A) $A \subset B$ but $A \neq B$ (B) $A = B$

(C) $A \cap B = \phi$ (D) $P(A) = P(B)$

13.3 Multiplication Theorem on Probability

Let E and F be two events associated with a sample space S. Clearly, the set $E \cap F$ denotes the event that both E and F have occurred. In other words, $E \cap F$ denotes the simultaneous occurrence of the events E and F. The event $E \cap F$ is also written as EF.

Very often we need to find the probability of the event EF. For example, in the experiment of drawing two cards one after the other, we may be interested in finding the probability of the event 'a king and a queen'. The probability of event EF is obtained by using the conditional probability as obtained below :

We know that the conditional probability of event E given that F has occurred is denoted by $P(E|F)$ and is given by

$$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)}, P(F) \neq 0$$

From this result, we can write

$$P(E \cap F) = P(F) \, . \, P(E|F) \quad \text{... (1)}$$

Also, we know that

$$P(F|E) = \frac{P(F \cap E)}{P(E)}, P(E) \neq 0$$

or

$$P(F|E) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(E)} \quad (\text{since } E \cap F = F \cap E)$$

Thus,

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E). \, P(F|E) \quad \text{.... (2)}$$

Combining (1) and (2), we find that

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E) \; P(F|E)$$

$$= P(F) \; P(E|F) \text{ provided } P(E) \neq 0 \text{ and } P(F) \neq 0.$$

The above result is known as the *multiplication rule of probability.*

Let us now take up an example.

Example 8 An urn contains 10 black and 5 white balls. Two balls are drawn from the urn one after the other without replacement. What is the probability that both drawn balls are black?

Solution Let E and F denote respectively the events that first and second ball drawn are black. We have to find $P(E \cap F)$ or $P(EF)$.

Now $\quad P(E) = P(\text{black ball in first draw}) = \frac{10}{15}$

Also given that the first ball drawn is black, i.e., event E has occurred, now there are 9 black balls and five white balls left in the urn. Therefore, the probability that the second ball drawn is black, given that the ball in the first draw is black, is nothing but the conditional probability of F given that E has occurred.

i.e. $\quad P(F|E) = \frac{9}{14}$

By multiplication rule of probability, we have

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E)\ P(F|E)$$

$$= \frac{10}{15} \times \frac{9}{14} = \frac{3}{7}$$

Multiplication rule of probability for more than two events If E, F and G are three events of sample space, we have

$$P(E \cap F \cap G) = P(E)\ P(F|E)\ P(G|(E \cap F)) = P(E)\ P(F|E)\ P(G|EF)$$

Similarly, the multiplication rule of probability can be extended for four or more events.

The following example illustrates the extension of multiplication rule of probability for three events.

Example 9 Three cards are drawn successively, without replacement from a pack of 52 well shuffled cards. What is the probability that first two cards are kings and the third card drawn is an ace?

Solution Let K denote the event that the card drawn is king and A be the event that the card drawn is an ace. Clearly, we have to find P (KKA)

Now $\quad P(K) = \frac{4}{52}$

Also, P (K|K) is the probability of second king with the condition that one king has already been drawn. Now there are three kings in $(52 - 1) = 51$ cards.

Therefore $\quad P(K|K) = \frac{3}{51}$

Lastly, P(A|KK) is the probability of third drawn card to be an ace, with the condition that two kings have already been drawn. Now there are four aces in left 50 cards.

Therefore $$P(A|KK) = \frac{4}{50}$$

By multiplication law of probability, we have

$$P(KKA) = P(K) \quad P(K|K) \quad P(A|KK)$$

$$= \frac{4}{52} \times \frac{3}{51} \times \frac{4}{50} = \frac{2}{5525}$$

13.4 Independent Events

Consider the experiment of drawing a card from a deck of 52 playing cards, in which the elementary events are assumed to be equally likely. If E and F denote the events 'the card drawn is a spade' and 'the card drawn is an ace' respectively, then

$$P(E) = \frac{13}{52} = \frac{1}{4} \text{ and } P(F) = \frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13}$$

Also E and F is the event ' the card drawn is the ace of spades' so that

$$P(E \cap F) = \frac{1}{52}$$

Hence $$P(E|F) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)} = \frac{\frac{1}{52}}{\frac{1}{13}} = \frac{1}{4}$$

Since $P(E) = \frac{1}{4} = P\ (E|F)$, we can say that the occurrence of event F has not affected the probability of occurrence of the event E.

We also have

$$P(F|E) = \frac{P(E \cap F)}{P(E)} = \frac{\frac{1}{52}}{\frac{1}{4}} = \frac{1}{13} = P(F)$$

Again, $P(F) = \frac{1}{13} = P(F|E)$ shows that occurrence of event E has not affected the probability of occurrence of the event F.

Thus, E and F are two events such that the probability of occurrence of one of them is not affected by occurrence of the other.

Such events are called *independent events*.

Definition 2 Two events E and F are said to be independent, if

$$P(F|E) = P(F) \text{ provided } P(E) \neq 0$$

and
$$P(E|F) = P(E) \text{ provided } P(F) \neq 0$$

Thus, in this definition we need to have $P(E) \neq 0$ and $P(F) \neq 0$

Now, by the multiplication rule of probability, we have

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F|E) \quad \text{... (1)}$$

If E and F are independent, then (1) becomes

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F) \quad \text{... (2)}$$

Thus, using (2), the independence of two events is also defined as follows:

Definition 3 Let E and F be two events associated with the same random experiment, then E and F are said to be independent if

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F)$$

Remarks

(i) Two events E and F are said to be dependent if they are not independent, i.e. if

$$P(E \cap F) \neq P(E) \cdot P(F)$$

(ii) Sometimes there is a confusion between independent events and mutually exclusive events. Term 'independent' is defined in terms of 'probability of events' whereas mutually exclusive is defined in term of events (subset of sample space). Moreover, mutually exclusive events never have an outcome common, but independent events, may have common outcome. Clearly, 'independent' and 'mutually exclusive' do not have the same meaning.

In other words, two independent events having nonzero probabilities of occurrence can not be mutually exclusive, and conversely, i.e. two mutually exclusive events having nonzero probabilities of occurrence can not be independent.

(iii) Two experiments are said to be independent if for every pair of events E and F, where E is associated with the first experiment and F with the second experiment, the probability of the simultaneous occurrence of the events E and F when the two experiments are performed is the product of P(E) and P(F) calculated separately on the basis of two experiments, i.e., $P(E \cap F) = P(E) \cdot P(F)$

(iv) Three events A, B and C are said to be mutually independent, if

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A)\, P(B)$$

$$P(A \cap C) = P(A)\, P(C)$$

$$P(B \cap C) = P(B)\, P(C)$$

and
$$P(A \cap B \cap C) = P(A)\, P(B)\, P(C)$$

If at least one of the above is not true for three given events, we say that the events are not independent.

Example 10 A die is thrown. If E is the event 'the number appearing is a multiple of 3' and F be the event 'the number appearing is even' then find whether E and F are independent ?

Solution We know that the sample space is S = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6}

Now $\qquad E = \{3, 6\}, F = \{2, 4, 6\}$ and $E \cap F = \{6\}$

Then $\qquad P(E) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}, \ P(F) = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(E \cap F) = \frac{1}{6}$

Clearly $\qquad P(E \cap F) = P(E). P(F)$

Hence $\qquad$ E and F are independent events.

Example 11 An unbiased die is thrown twice. Let the event A be 'odd number on the first throw' and B the event 'odd number on the second throw'. Check the independence of the events A and B.

Solution If all the 36 elementary events of the experiment are considered to be equally likely, we have

$$P(A) = \frac{18}{36} = \frac{1}{2} \text{ and } P(B) = \frac{18}{36} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Also $\qquad P(A \cap B) = P$ (odd number on both throws)

$$= \frac{9}{36} = \frac{1}{4}$$

Now $\qquad P(A)\ P(B) = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$

Clearly $\qquad P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$

Thus, $\qquad$ A and B are independent events

Example 12 Three coins are tossed simultaneously. Consider the event E 'three heads or three tails', F 'at least two heads' and G 'at most two heads'. Of the pairs (E,F), (E,G) and (F,G), which are independent? which are dependent?

Solution The sample space of the experiment is given by

$$S = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH, HTT, THT, TTH, TTT\}$$

Clearly $\qquad E = \{HHH, TTT\}, F = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH\}$

and $G = \{HHT, HTH, THH, HTT, THT, TTH, TTT\}$

Also $E \cap F = \{HHH\}, E \cap G = \{TTT\}, F \cap G = \{HHT, HTH, THH\}$

Therefore $P(E) = \frac{2}{8} = \frac{1}{4}, P(F) = \frac{4}{8} = \frac{1}{2}, P(G) = \frac{7}{8}$

and $P(E \cap F) = \frac{1}{8}, P(E \cap G) = \frac{1}{8}, P(F \cap G) = \frac{3}{8}$

Also $P(E) \,.\, P(F) = \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{8}, P(E) \cdot P(G) = \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{7}{8} = \frac{7}{32}$

and $P(F) \,.\, P(G) = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{7}{8} = \frac{7}{16}$

Thus $P(E \cap F) = P(E) \,.\, P(F)$

$P(E \cap G) \neq P(E) \,.\, P(G)$

and $P(F \cap G) \neq P(F) \,.\, P(G)$

Hence, the events (E and F) are independent, and the events (E and G) and (F and G) are dependent.

Example 13 Prove that if E and F are independent events, then so are the events E and F′.

Solution Since E and F are independent, we have

$$P(E \cap F) = P(E) \,.\, P(F) \quad ....(1)$$

From the venn diagram in Fig 13.3, it is clear that $E \cap F$ and $E \cap F'$ are mutually exclusive events and also $E = (E \cap F) \cup (E \cap F')$.

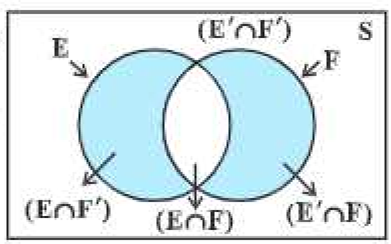


Fig 13.3

Therefore $P(E) = P(E \cap F) + P(E \cap F')$

or $P(E \cap F') = P(E) - P(E \cap F)$

$= P(E) - P(E) \,.\, P(F)$ (by (1))

$= P(E)\ (1 - P(F))$

$= P(E).\ P(F')$

Hence, E and F′ are independent

Note In a similar manner, it can be shown that if the events E and F are independent, then

(a) E' and F are independent,

(b) E' and F' are independent

Example 14 If A and B are two independent events, then the probability of occurrence of at least one of A and B is given by $1 - P(A') P(B')$

Solution We have

$$
\begin{aligned}
P(\text{at least one of A and B}) &= P(A \cup B) \\
&= P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B) \\
&= P(A) + P(B) - P(A)\, P(B) \\
&= P(A) + P(B)\, [1 - P(A)] \\
&= P(A) + P(B).\, P(A') \\
&= 1 - P(A') + P(B)\, P(A') \\
&= 1 - P(A')\, [1 - P(B)] \\
&= 1 - P(A')\, P(B')
\end{aligned}
$$

EXERCISE 13.2

1. If $P(A) = \frac{3}{5}$ and $P(B) = \frac{1}{5}$, find $P(A \cap B)$ if A and B are independent events.
2. Two cards are drawn at random and without replacement from a pack of 52 playing cards. Find the probability that both the cards are black.
3. A box of oranges is inspected by examining three randomly selected oranges drawn without replacement. If all the three oranges are good, the box is approved for sale, otherwise, it is rejected. Find the probability that a box containing 15 oranges out of which 12 are good and 3 are bad ones will be approved for sale.
4. A fair coin and an unbiased die are tossed. Let A be the event 'head appears on the coin' and B be the event '3 on the die'. Check whether A and B are independent events or not.
5. A die marked 1, 2, 3 in red and 4, 5, 6 in green is tossed. Let A be the event, 'the number is even,' and B be the event, 'the number is red'. Are A and B independent?
6. Let E and F be events with $P(E) = \frac{3}{5}$, $P(F) = \frac{3}{10}$ and $P(E \cap F) = \frac{1}{5}$. Are E and F independent?

7. Given that the events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(A \cup B) = \frac{3}{5}$ and $P(B) = p$. Find p if they are (i) mutually exclusive (ii) independent.

8. Let A and B be independent events with $P(A) = 0.3$ and $P(B) = 0.4$. Find

(i) $P(A \cap B)$ (ii) $P(A \cup B)$

(iii) $P(A|B)$ (iv) $P(B|A)$

9. If A and B are two events such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{4}$, $P(B) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $P(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{8}$, find P (not A and not B).

10. Events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $P(B) = \frac{7}{12}$ and P(not A or not B) $= \frac{1}{4}$. State whether A and B are independent ?

11. Given two independent events A and B such that $P(A) = 0.3$, $P(B) = 0.6$. Find

(i) P(A and B) (ii) P(A and not B)

(iii) P(A or B) (iv) P(neither A nor B)

12. A die is tossed thrice. Find the probability of getting an odd number at least once.

13. Two balls are drawn at random with replacement from a box containing 10 black and 8 red balls. Find the probability that

(i) both balls are red.

(ii) first ball is black and second is red.

(iii) one of them is black and other is red.

14. Probability of solving specific problem independently by A and B are $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{3}$ respectively. If both try to solve the problem independently, find the probability that

(i) the problem is solved (ii) exactly one of them solves the problem.

15. One card is drawn at random from a well shuffled deck of 52 cards. In which of the following cases are the events E and F independent ?

(i) E : 'the card drawn is a spade'
F : 'the card drawn is an ace'

(ii) E : 'the card drawn is black'
F : 'the card drawn is a king'

(iii) E : 'the card drawn is a king or queen'
F : 'the card drawn is a queen or jack'.

16. In a hostel, 60% of the students read Hindi newspaper, 40% read English newspaper and 20% read both Hindi and English newspapers. A student is selected at random.

    (a) Find the probability that she reads neither Hindi nor English newspapers.

    (b) If she reads Hindi newspaper, find the probability that she reads English newspaper.

    (c) If she reads English newspaper, find the probability that she reads Hindi newspaper.

Choose the correct answer in Exercises 17 and 18.

17. The probability of obtaining an even prime number on each die, when a pair of dice is rolled is

    (A) 0 (B) $\frac{1}{3}$ (C) $\frac{1}{12}$ (D) $\frac{1}{36}$

18. Two events A and B will be independent, if

    (A) A and B are mutually exclusive

    (B) $P(A'B') = [1 - P(A)]\ [1 - P(B)]$

    (C) $P(A) = P(B)$

    (D) $P(A) + P(B) = 1$

13.5 Bayes' Theorem

Consider that there are two bags I and II. Bag I contains 2 white and 3 red balls and Bag II contains 4 white and 5 red balls. One ball is drawn at random from one of the bags. We can find the probability of selecting any of the bags (i.e. $\frac{1}{2}$) or probability of drawing a ball of a particular colour (say white) from a particular bag (say Bag I). In other words, we can find the probability that the ball drawn is of a particular colour, if we are given the bag from which the ball is drawn. But, can we find the probability that the ball drawn is from a particular bag (say Bag II), if the colour of the ball drawn is given? Here, we have to find the reverse probability of Bag II to be selected when an event occurred after it is known. Famous mathematician, John Bayes' solved the problem of finding reverse probability by using conditional probability. The formula developed by him is known as *'Bayes theorem'* which was published posthumously in 1763. Before stating and proving the Bayes' theorem, let us first take up a definition and some preliminary results.

13.5.1 *Partition of a sample space*

A set of events $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ is said to represent a partition of the sample space S if

(a) $E_i \cap E_j = \phi,\ i \neq j,\ i, j = 1, 2, 3, ..., n$

(b) $E_1 \cup E_2 \cup ... \cup E_n = S$ and

(c) $P(E_i) > 0$ for all $i = 1, 2, ..., n$.

In other words, the events $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ represent a partition of the sample space S if they are pairwise disjoint, exhaustive and have nonzero probabilities.

As an example, we see that any nonempty event E and its complement E′ form a partition of the sample space S since they satisfy $E \cap E' = \phi$ and $E \cup E' = S$.

From the Venn diagram in Fig 13.3, one can easily observe that if E and F are any two events associated with a sample space S, then the set $\{E \cap F', E \cap F, E' \cap F, E' \cap F'\}$ is a partition of the sample space S. It may be mentioned that the partition of a sample space is not unique. There can be several partitions of the same sample space.

We shall now prove a theorem known as *Theorem of total probability*.

13.5.2 *Theorem of total probability*

Let $\{E_1, E_2, ..., E_n\}$ be a partition of the sample space S, and suppose that each of the events $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ has nonzero probability of occurrence. Let A be any event associated with S, then

$$P(A) = P(E_1)\, P(A|E_1) + P(E_2)\, P(A|E_2) + ... + P(E_n)\, P(A|E_n)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^{n} P(E_j)\, P(A|E_j)$$

Proof Given that $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ is a partition of the sample space S (Fig 13.4). Therefore,

$$S = E_1 \cup E_2 \cup ... \cup E_n \qquad ... (1)$$

and $\quad E_i \cap E_j = \phi,\ i \neq j,\ i, j = 1, 2, ..., n$

Now, we know that for any event A,

$$A = A \cap S$$

$$= A \cap (E_1 \cup E_2 \cup ... \cup E_n)$$

$$= (A \cap E_1) \cup (A \cap E_2) \cup ... \cup (A \cap E_n)$$

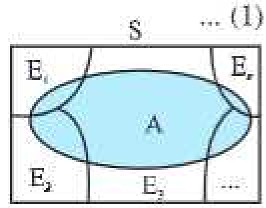


Fig 13.4

Also $A \cap E_i$ and $A \cap E_j$ are respectively the subsets of E_i and E_j. We know that E_i and E_j are disjoint, for $i \neq j$, therefore, $A \cap E_i$ and $A \cap E_j$ are also disjoint for all $i \neq j,\ i, j = 1, 2, ..., n$.

Thus, $\quad P(A) = P\,[(A \cap E_1) \cup (A \cap E_2) \cup ..... \cup (A \cap E_n)]$

$$= P\,(A \cap E_1) + P\,(A \cap E_2) + ... + P\,(A \cap E_n)$$

Now, by multiplication rule of probability, we have

$$P(A \cap E_i) = P(E_i)\, P(A|E_i) \text{ as } P\,(E_i) \neq 0 \,\forall i = 1,2,..., n$$

Therefore, $$P(A) = P(E_1)\, P(A|E_1) + P(E_2)\, P(A|E_2) + ... + P(E_n) P(A|E_n)$$

or $$P(A) = \sum_{j=1}^{n} P(E_j) P(A|E_j)$$

Example 15 A person has undertaken a construction job. The probabilities are 0.65 that there will be strike, 0.80 that the construction job will be completed on time if there is no strike, and 0.32 that the construction job will be completed on time if there is a strike. Determine the probability that the construction job will be completed on time.

Solution Let A be the event that the construction job will be completed on time, and B be the event that there will be a strike. We have to find P(A).
We have

$$P(B) = 0.65,\ P(\text{no strike}) = P(B') = 1 - P(B) = 1 - 0.65 = 0.35$$

$$P(A|B) = 0.32,\ P(A|B') = 0.80$$

Since events B and B′ form a partition of the sample space S, therefore, by theorem on total probability, we have

$$\begin{aligned} P(A) &= P(B)\ P(A|B) + P(B')\ P(A|B') \\ &= 0.65 \times 0.32 + 0.35 \times 0.8 \\ &= 0.208 + 0.28 = 0.488 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the probability that the construction job will be completed in time is 0.488.

We shall now state and prove the Bayes' theorem.

Bayes' Theorem If $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ are n non empty events which constitute a partition of sample space S, i.e. $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ are pairwise disjoint and $E_1 \cup E_2 \cup ... \cup E_n = S$ and A is any event of nonzero probability, then

$$P(E_i|A) = \frac{P(E_i) P(A|E_i)}{\sum_{j=1}^{n} P(E_j) P(A|E_j)} \quad \text{for any } i = 1, 2, 3, ..., n$$

Proof By formula of conditional probability, we know that

$$\begin{aligned} P(E_i|A) &= \frac{P(A \cap E_i)}{P(A)} \\ &= \frac{P(E_i) P(A|E_i)}{P(A)} \quad \text{(by multiplication rule of probability)} \\ &= \frac{P(E_i) P(A|E_i)}{\sum_{j=1}^{n} P(E_j) P(A|E_j)} \quad \text{(by the result of theorem of total probability)} \end{aligned}$$

Remark The following terminology is generally used when Bayes' theorem is applied.

The events $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ are called *hypotheses*.

The probability $P(E_i)$ is called the *priori probability* of the hypothesis E_i

The conditional probability $P(E_i|A)$ is called *a posteriori probability* of the hypothesis E_i.

Bayes' theorem is also called the formula for the probability of "causes". Since the E_i's are a partition of the sample space S, one and only one of the events E_i occurs (i.e. one of the events E_i must occur and only one can occur). Hence, the above formula gives us the probability of a particular E_i (i.e. a "Cause"), given that the event A has occurred.

The Bayes' theorem has its applications in variety of situations, few of which are illustrated in following examples.

Example 16 Bag I contains 3 red and 4 black balls while another Bag II contains 5 red and 6 black balls. One ball is drawn at random from one of the bags and it is found to be red. Find the probability that it was drawn from Bag II.

Solution Let E_1 be the event of choosing the bag I, E_2 the event of choosing the bag II and A be the event of drawing a red ball.

Then $\quad P(E_1) = P(E_2) = \frac{1}{2}$

Also $\quad P(A|E_1) = P(\text{drawing a red ball from Bag I}) = \frac{3}{7}$

and $\quad P(A|E_2) = P(\text{drawing a red ball from Bag II}) = \frac{5}{11}$

Now, the probability of drawing a ball from Bag II, being given that it is red, is $P(E_2|A)$

By using Bayes' theorem, we have

$$P(E_2|A) = \frac{P(E_2)P(A|E_2)}{P(E_1)P(A|E_1)+P(E_2)P(A|E_2)} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\times\frac{5}{11}}{\frac{1}{2}\times\frac{3}{7}+\frac{1}{2}\times\frac{5}{11}} = \frac{35}{68}$$

Example 17 Given three identical boxes I, II and III, each containing two coins. In box I, both coins are gold coins, in box II, both are silver coins and in the box III, there is one gold and one silver coin. A person chooses a box at random and takes out a coin. If the coin is of gold, what is the probability that the other coin in the box is also of gold?

Solution Let E_1, E_2 and E_3 be the events that boxes I, II and III are chosen, respectively.

Then $$P(E_1) = P(E_2) = P(E_3) = \frac{1}{3}$$

Also, let A be the event that 'the coin drawn is of gold'

Then $$P(A|E_1) = P(\text{a gold coin from bag I}) = \frac{2}{2} = 1$$

$$P(A|E_2) = P(\text{a gold coin from bag II}) = 0$$

$$P(A|E_3) = P(\text{a gold coin from bag III}) = \frac{1}{2}$$

Now, the probability that the other coin in the box is of gold

= the probability that gold coin is drawn from the box I.

$= P(E_1|A)$

By Bayes' theorem, we know that

$$P(E_1|A) = \frac{P(E_1)P(A|E_1)}{P(E_1)P(A|E_1)+P(E_2)P(A|E_2)+P(E_3)P(A|E_3)}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{3}\times 1}{\frac{1}{3}\times 1+\frac{1}{3}\times 0+\frac{1}{3}\times\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{2}{3}$$

Example 18 Suppose that the reliability of a HIV test is specified as follows:

Of people having HIV, 90% of the test detect the disease but 10% go undetected. Of people free of HIV, 99% of the test are judged HIV–ive but 1% are diagnosed as showing HIV+ive. From a large population of which only 0.1% have HIV, one person is selected at random, given the HIV test, and the pathologist reports him/her as HIV+ive. What is the probability that the person actually has HIV?

Solution Let E denote the event that the person selected is actually having HIV and A the event that the person's HIV test is diagnosed as +ive. We need to find $P(E|A)$.

Also E' denotes the event that the person selected is actually not having HIV.

Clearly, $\{E, E'\}$ is a partition of the sample space of all people in the population. We are given that

$$P(E) = 0.1\% = \frac{0.1}{100} = 0.001$$

$$P(E') = 1 - P(E) = 0.999$$

$P(A|E)$ = P(Person tested as HIV+ive given that he/she is actually having HIV)

$$= 90\% = \frac{90}{100} = 0.9$$

and $P(A|E')$ = P(Person tested as HIV +ive given that he/she is actually not having HIV)

$$= 1\% = \frac{1}{100} = 0.01$$

Now, by Bayes' theorem

$$P(E|A) = \frac{P(E)\,P(A|E)}{P(E)\,P(A|E) + P(E')\,P(A|E')}$$

$$= \frac{0.001 \times 0.9}{0.001 \times 0.9 + 0.999 \times 0.01} = \frac{90}{1089}$$

$$= 0.083 \text{ approx.}$$

Thus, the probability that a person selected at random is actually having HIV given that he/she is tested HIV+ive is 0.083.

Example 19 In a factory which manufactures bolts, machines A, B and C manufacture respectively 25%, 35% and 40% of the bolts. Of their outputs, 5, 4 and 2 percent are respectively defective bolts. A bolt is drawn at random from the product and is found to be defective. What is the probability that it is manufactured by the machine B?

Solution Let events B_1, B_2, B_3 be the following :

B_1 : the bolt is manufactured by machine A

B_2 : the bolt is manufactured by machine B

B_3 : the bolt is manufactured by machine C

Clearly, B_1, B_2, B_3 are mutually exclusive and exhaustive events and hence, they represent a partition of the sample space.

Let the event E be 'the bolt is defective'.

The event E occurs with B_1 or with B_2 or with B_3. Given that,

$$P(B_1) = 25\% = 0.25,\ P(B_2) = 0.35 \text{ and } P(B_3) = 0.40$$

Again $P(E|B_1)$ = Probability that the bolt drawn is defective given that it is manufactured by machine A = 5% = 0.05

Similarly, $P(E|B_2) = 0.04$, $P(E|B_3) = 0.02$.

Hence, by Bayes' Theorem, we have

$$P(B_2|E) = \frac{P(B_2)P(E|B_2)}{P(B_1)P(E|B_1)+P(B_2)P(E|B_2)+P(B_3)P(E|B_3)}$$

$$= \frac{0.35\times 0.04}{0.25\times 0.05+0.35\times 0.04+0.40\times 0.02}$$

$$= \frac{0.0140}{0.0345} = \frac{28}{69}$$

Example 20 A doctor is to visit a patient. From the past experience, it is known that the probabilities that he will come by train, bus, scooter or by other means of transport are respectively $\frac{3}{10}, \frac{1}{5}, \frac{1}{10}$ and $\frac{2}{5}$. The probabilities that he will be late are $\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{3}$, and $\frac{1}{12}$, if he comes by train, bus and scooter respectively, but if he comes by other means of transport, then he will not be late. When he arrives, he is late. What is the probability that he comes by train?

Solution Let E be the event that the doctor visits the patient late and let T_1, T_2, T_3, T_4 be the events that the doctor comes by train, bus, scooter, and other means of transport respectively.

Then $\quad P(T_1) = \frac{3}{10}, P(T_2) = \frac{1}{5}, P(T_3) = \frac{1}{10}$ and $P(T_4) = \frac{2}{5}$ (given)

$P(E|T_1)$ = Probability that the doctor arriving late comes by train = $\frac{1}{4}$

Similarly, $P(E|T_2) = \frac{1}{3}$, $P(E|T_3) = \frac{1}{12}$ and $P(E|T_4) = 0$, since he is not late if he comes by other means of transport.

Therefore, by Bayes' Theorem, we have

$P(T_1|E)$ = Probability that the doctor arriving late comes by train

$$= \frac{P(T_1)P(E|T_1)}{P(T_1)P(E|T_1)+P(T_2)P(E|T_2)+P(T_3)P(E|T_3)+P(T_4)P(E|T_4)}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{3}{10}\times\frac{1}{4}}{\frac{3}{10}\times\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{5}\times\frac{1}{3}+\frac{1}{10}\times\frac{1}{12}+\frac{2}{5}\times 0} = \frac{3}{40}\times\frac{120}{18} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Hence, the required probability is $\frac{1}{2}$.

Example 21 A man is known to speak truth 3 out of 4 times. He throws a die and reports that it is a six. Find the probability that it is actually a six.

Solution Let E be the event that the man reports that six occurs in the throwing of the die and let S_1 be the event that six occurs and S_2 be the event that six does not occur.

Then $P(S_1)$ = Probability that *six* occurs = $\frac{1}{6}$

$P(S_2)$ = Probability that *six* does not occur = $\frac{5}{6}$

$P(E|S_1)$ = Probability that the man reports that *six* occurs when *six* has actually occurred on the die

= Probability that the man speaks the truth = $\frac{3}{4}$

$P(E|S_2)$ = Probability that the man reports that *six* occurs when *six* has not actually occurred on the die

= Probability that the man does not speak the truth $= 1 - \frac{3}{4} = \frac{1}{4}$

Thus, by Bayes' theorem, we get

$P(S_1|E)$ = Probability that the report of the man that *six* has occurred is actually a *six*

$$= \frac{P(S_1)P(E|S_1)}{P(S_1)P(E|S_1) + P(S_2)P(E|S_2)}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{6} \times \frac{3}{4}}{\frac{1}{6} \times \frac{3}{4} + \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{1}{4}} = \frac{1}{8} \times \frac{24}{8} = \frac{3}{8}$$

Hence, the required probability is $\frac{3}{8}$.

Remark A random variable is a real valued function whose domain is the sample space of a random experiment.

For example, let us consider the experiment of tossing a coin two times in succession.

The sample space of the experiment is $S = \{HH, HT, TH, TT\}$.

If X denotes the number of heads obtained, then X is a random variable and for each outcome, its value is as given below :

$$X(HH) = 2,\ X(HT) = 1,\ X(TH) = 1,\ X(TT) = 0.$$

More than one random variables can be defined on the same sample space. For example, let Y denote the number of heads minus the number of tails for each outcome of the above sample space S.

Then $\quad Y(HH) = 2,\ Y(HT) = 0,\ Y(TH) = 0,\ Y(TT) = -2.$

Thus, X and Y are two different random variables defined on the same sample space S.

EXERCISE 13.3

1. An urn contains 5 red and 5 black balls. A ball is drawn at random, its colour is noted and is returned to the urn. Moreover, 2 additional balls of the colour drawn are put in the urn and then a ball is drawn at random. What is the probability that the second ball is red?
2. A bag contains 4 red and 4 black balls, another bag contains 2 red and 6 black balls. One of the two bags is selected at random and a ball is drawn from the bag which is found to be red. Find the probability that the ball is drawn from the first bag.
3. Of the students in a college, it is known that 60% reside in hostel and 40% are day scholars (not residing in hostel). Previous year results report that 30% of all students who reside in hostel attain A grade and 20% of day scholars attain A grade in their annual examination. At the end of the year, one student is chosen at random from the college and he has an A grade, what is the probability that the student is a hostlier?
4. In answering a question on a multiple choice test, a student either knows the answer or guesses. Let $\frac{3}{4}$ be the probability that he knows the answer and $\frac{1}{4}$ be the probability that he guesses. Assuming that a student who guesses at the answer will be correct with probability $\frac{1}{4}$. What is the probability that the student knows the answer given that he answered it correctly?
5. A laboratory blood test is 99% effective in detecting a certain disease when it is in fact, present. However, the test also yields a false positive result for 0.5% of the healthy person tested (i.e. if a healthy person is tested, then, with probability 0.005, the test will imply he has the disease). If 0.1 percent of the population

actually has the disease, what is the probability that a person has the disease given that his test result is positive ?

6. There are three coins. One is a two headed coin (having head on both faces), another is a biased coin that comes up heads 75% of the time and third is an unbiased coin. One of the three coins is chosen at random and tossed, it shows heads, what is the probability that it was the two headed coin ?

7. An insurance company insured 2000 scooter drivers, 4000 car drivers and 6000 truck drivers. The probability of an accidents are 0.01, 0.03 and 0.15 respectively. One of the insured persons meets with an accident. What is the probability that he is a scooter driver?

8. A factory has two machines A and B. Past record shows that machine A produced 60% of the items of output and machine B produced 40% of the items. Further, 2% of the items produced by machine A and 1% produced by machine B were defective. All the items are put into one stockpile and then one item is chosen at random from this and is found to be defective. What is the probability that it was produced by machine B?

9. Two groups are competing for the position on the Board of directors of a corporation. The probabilities that the first and the second groups will win are 0.6 and 0.4 respectively. Further, if the first group wins, the probability of introducing a new product is 0.7 and the corresponding probability is 0.3 if the second group wins. Find the probability that the new product introduced was by the second group.

10. Suppose a girl throws a die. If she gets a 5 or 6, she tosses a coin three times and notes the number of heads. If she gets 1, 2, 3 or 4, she tosses a coin once and notes whether a head or tail is obtained. If she obtained exactly one head, what is the probability that she threw 1, 2, 3 or 4 with the die?

11. A manufacturer has three machine operators A, B and C. The first operator A produces 1% defective items, where as the other two operators B and C produce 5% and 7% defective items respectively. A is on the job for 50% of the time, B is on the job for 30% of the time and C is on the job for 20% of the time. A defective item is produced, what is the probability that it was produced by A?

12. A card from a pack of 52 cards is lost. From the remaining cards of the pack, two cards are drawn and are found to be both diamonds. Find the probability of the lost card being a diamond.

13. Probability that A speaks truth is $\frac{4}{5}$. A coin is tossed. A reports that a head appears. The probability that actually there was head is

(A) $\frac{4}{5}$ (B) $\frac{1}{2}$ (C) $\frac{1}{5}$ (D) $\frac{2}{5}$

14. If A and B are two events such that $A \subset B$ and $P(B) \neq 0$, then which of the following is correct?

(A) $P(A|B) = \frac{P(B)}{P(A)}$ (B) $P(A|B) < P(A)$

(C) $P(A|B) \geq P(A)$ (D) None of these

Miscellaneous Examples

Example 22 Coloured balls are distributed in four boxes as shown in the following table:

Box	Colour			
	Black	**White**	**Red**	**Blue**
I	3	4	5	6
II	2	2	2	2
III	1	2	3	1
IV	4	3	1	5

A box is selected at random and then a ball is randomly drawn from the selected box. The colour of the ball is black, what is the probability that ball drawn is from the box III?

Solution Let A, E_1, E_2, E_3 and E_4 be the events as defined below :

A : a black ball is selected E_1 : box I is selected

E_2 : box II is selected E_3 : box III is selected

E_4 : box IV is selected

Since the boxes are chosen at random,

Therefore $P(E_1) = P(E_2) = P(E_3) = P(E_4) = \frac{1}{4}$

Also $P(A|E_1) = \frac{3}{18}$, $P(A|E_2) = \frac{2}{8}$, $P(A|E_3) = \frac{1}{7}$ and $P(A|E_4) = \frac{4}{13}$

P(box III is selected, given that the drawn ball is black) = $P(E_3|A)$. By Bayes' theorem,

$$P(E_3|A) = \frac{P(E_3)\cdot P(A|E_3)}{P(E_1)P(A|E_1)+P(E_2)P(A|E_2)+P(E_3)P(A|E_3)+P(E_4)P(A|E_4)}$$

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{4}\times\frac{1}{7}}{\frac{1}{4}\times\frac{3}{18}+\frac{1}{4}\times\frac{1}{4}+\frac{1}{4}\times\frac{1}{7}+\frac{1}{4}\times\frac{4}{13}} = 0.165$$

Example 23 A and B throw a die alternatively till one of them gets a '6' and wins the game. Find their respective probabilities of winning, if A starts first.

Solution Let S denote the success (getting a '6') and F denote the failure (not getting a '6').

Thus, $$P(S) = \frac{1}{6},\ P(F)=\frac{5}{6}$$

$$P(\text{A wins in the first throw}) = P(S) = \frac{1}{6}$$

A gets the third throw, when the first throw by A and second throw by B result into failures.

Therefore, $$P(\text{A wins in the 3rd throw}) = P(FFS) = P(F)P(F)P(S) = \frac{5}{6}\times\frac{5}{6}\times\frac{1}{6}$$

$$= \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^2\times\frac{1}{6}$$

$$P(\text{A wins in the 5th throw}) = P\ (FFFFS) = \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^4\left(\frac{1}{6}\right) \text{ and so on.}$$

Hence, $$P(\text{A wins}) = \frac{1}{6}+\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^2\left(\frac{1}{6}\right)+\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^4\left(\frac{1}{6}\right)+...$$

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{6}}{1-\frac{25}{36}} = \frac{6}{11}$$

$$P(\text{B wins}) = 1 - P\ (\text{A wins}) = 1-\frac{6}{11}=\frac{5}{11}$$

Remark If $a + ar + ar^2 + ... + ar^{n-1} + ...$, where $|r| < 1$, then sum of this infinite G.P. is given by $\frac{a}{1-r}\cdot$ (Refer A.1.3 of Class XI Text book).

Example 24 If a machine is correctly set up, it produces 90% acceptable items. If it is incorrectly set up, it produces only 40% acceptable items. Past experience shows that 80% of the set ups are correctly done. If after a certain set up, the machine produces 2 acceptable items, find the probability that the machine is correctly setup.

Solution Let A be the event that the machine produces 2 acceptable items.

Also let B_1 represent the event of correct set up and B_2 represent the event of incorrect setup.

Now $\quad P(B_1) = 0.8, P(B_2) = 0.2$

$$P(A|B_1) = 0.9 \times 0.9 \text{ and } P(A|B_2) = 0.4 \times 0.4$$

Therefore
$$P(B_1|A) = \frac{P(B_1)\,P(A|B_1)}{P(B_1)\,P(A|B_1) + P(B_2)\,P(A|B_2)}$$

$$= \frac{0.8 \times 0.9 \times 0.9}{0.8 \times 0.9 \times 0.9 + 0.2 \times 0.4 \times 0.4} = \frac{648}{680} = 0.95$$

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 13

1. A and B are two events such that P (A) ≠ 0. Find P(B|A), if
   (i) A is a subset of B (ii) $A \cap B = \phi$
2. A couple has two children,
   (i) Find the probability that both children are males, if it is known that at least one of the children is male.
   (ii) Find the probability that both children are females, if it is known that the elder child is a female.
3. Suppose that 5% of men and 0.25% of women have grey hair. A grey haired person is selected at random. What is the probability of this person being male? Assume that there are equal number of males and females.
4. Suppose that 90% of people are right-handed. What is the probability that at most 6 of a random sample of 10 people are right-handed?
5. If a leap year is selected at random, what is the chance that it will contain 53 tuesdays?
6. Suppose we have four boxes A,B,C and D containing coloured marbles as given below:

Box	Marble colour		
	Red	White	Black
A	1	6	3
B	6	2	2
C	8	1	1
D	0	6	4

One of the boxes has been selected at random and a single marble is drawn from it. If the marble is red, what is the probability that it was drawn from box A?, box B?, box C?

7. Assume that the chances of a patient having a heart attack is 40%. It is also assumed that a meditation and yoga course reduce the risk of heart attack by 30% and prescription of certain drug reduces its chances by 25%. At a time a patient can choose any one of the two options with equal probabilities. It is given that after going through one of the two options the patient selected at random suffers a heart attack. Find the probability that the patient followed a course of meditation and yoga?

8. If each element of a second order determinant is either zero or one, what is the probability that the value of the determinant is positive? (Assume that the individual entries of the determinant are chosen independently, each value being assumed with probability $\frac{1}{2}$).

9. An electronic assembly consists of two subsystems, say, A and B. From previous testing procedures, the following probabilities are assumed to be known:

$$P(\text{A fails}) = 0.2$$
$$P(\text{B fails alone}) = 0.15$$
$$P(\text{A and B fail}) = 0.15$$

Evaluate the following probabilities

(i) $P(\text{A fails}|\text{B has failed})$ (ii) $P(\text{A fails alone})$

10. Bag I contains 3 red and 4 black balls and Bag II contains 4 red and 5 black balls. One ball is transferred from Bag I to Bag II and then a ball is drawn from Bag II. The ball so drawn is found to be red in colour. Find the probability that the transferred ball is black.

Choose the correct answer in each of the following:

11. If A and B are two events such that $P(A) \neq 0$ and $P(B \mid A) = 1$, then

(A) $A \subset B$ (B) $B \subset A$ (C) $B = \phi$ (D) $A = \phi$

12. If P(A|B) > P(A), then which of the following is correct :

(A) $P(B|A) < P(B)$ (B) $P(A \cap B) < P(A) . P(B)$

(C) $P(B|A) > P(B)$ (D) $P(B|A) = P(B)$

13. If A and B are any two events such that P(A) + P(B) – P(A and B) = P(A), then

(A) $P(B|A) = 1$ (B) $P(A|B) = 1$

(C) $P(B|A) = 0$ (D) $P(A|B) = 0$

Summary

The salient features of the chapter are –

- The conditional probability of an event E, given the occurrence of the event F is given by $P(E\,|\,F) = \dfrac{P(E \cap F)}{P(F)}$, $P(F) \neq 0$
- $0 \leq P(E|F) \leq 1$, $P(E'|F) = 1 - P(E|F)$
  $P((E \cup F)|G) = P(E|G) + P(F|G) - P((E \cap F)|G)$
- $P(E \cap F) = P(E)\,P(F|E)$, $P(E) \neq 0$
  $P(E \cap F) = P(F)\,P(E|F)$, $P(F) \neq 0$
- If E and F are independent, then
  $P(E \cap F) = P(E)\,P(F)$
  $P(E|F) = P(E)$, $P(F) \neq 0$
  $P(F|E) = P(F)$, $P(E) \neq 0$
- **Theorem of total probability**
  Let $\{E_1, E_2, ..., E_n\}$ be a partition of a sample space and suppose that each of $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ has nonzero probability. Let A be any event associated with S, then
  $P(A) = P(E_1)\,P(A|E_1) + P(E_2)\,P(A|E_2) + ... + P(E_n)\,P(A|E_n)$
- **Bayes' theorem** If $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ are events which constitute a partition of sample space S, i.e. $E_1, E_2, ..., E_n$ are pairwise disjoint and $E_1 \cup E_2 \cup ... \cup E_n = S$ and A be any event with nonzero probability, then

$$P(E_i\,|\,A) = \frac{P(E_i)\,P(A|E_i)}{\sum_{j=1}^{n} P(E_j)\,P(A|E_j)}$$

Historical Note

The earliest indication on measurement of chances in game of dice appeared in 1477 in a commentary on Dante's Divine Comedy. A treatise on gambling named *liber de Ludo Alcae*, by Geronimo Carden (1501-1576) was published posthumously in 1663. In this treatise, he gives the number of favourable cases for each event when two dice are thrown.

Galileo (1564-1642) gave casual remarks concerning the correct evaluation of chance in a game of three dice. Galileo analysed that when three dice are thrown, the sum of the number that appear is more likely to be 10 than the sum 9, because the number of cases favourable to 10 are more than the number of cases for the appearance of number 9.

Apart from these early contributions, it is generally acknowledged that the true origin of the science of probability lies in the correspondence between two great men of the seventeenth century, Pascal (1623-1662) and Pierre de Fermat (1601-1665). A French gambler, Chevalier de Metre asked Pascal to explain some seeming contradiction between his theoretical reasoning and the observation gathered from gambling. In a series of letters written around 1654, Pascal and Fermat laid the first foundation of science of probability. Pascal solved the problem in algebraic manner while Fermat used the method of combinations.

Great Dutch Scientist, Huygens (1629-1695), became acquainted with the content of the correspondence between Pascal and Fermat and published a first book on probability, "*De Ratiociniis in Ludo Aleae*" containing solution of many interesting rather than difficult problems on probability in games of chances.

The next great work on probability theory is by Jacob Bernoulli (1654-1705), in the form of a great book, "*Ars Conjectendi*" published posthumously in 1713 by his nephew, Nicholes Bernoulli. To him is due the discovery of one of the most important probability distribution known as Binomial distribution. The next remarkable work on probability lies in 1993. A. N. Kolmogorov (1903-1987) is credited with the axiomatic theory of probability. His book, 'Foundations of probability' published in 1933, introduces probability as a set function and is considered a 'classic!'.

ANSWERS

EXERCISE 7.1

1. $-\frac{1}{2}\cos 2x$
2. $\frac{1}{3}\sin 3x$
3. $\frac{1}{2}e^{2x}$
4. $\frac{1}{3a}(ax+b)^3$
5. $-\frac{1}{2}\cos 2x-\frac{4}{3}e^{3x}$
6. $\frac{4}{3}e^{3x}+x+C$
7. $\frac{x^3}{3}-x+C$
8. $\frac{ax^3}{3}+\frac{bx^2}{2}+cx+C$
9. $\frac{2}{3}x^3+e^x+C$
10. $\frac{x^2}{2}+\log|x|-2x+C$
11. $\frac{x^2}{2}+5x+\frac{4}{x}+C$
12. $\frac{2}{7}x^{\frac{7}{2}}+2x^{\frac{3}{2}}+8\sqrt{x}+C$
13. $\frac{x^3}{3}+x+C$
14. $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}-\frac{2}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}}+C$
15. $\frac{6}{7}x^{\frac{7}{2}}+\frac{4}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}}+2x^{\frac{3}{2}}+C$
16. $x^2-3\sin x+e^x+C$
17. $\frac{2}{3}x^3+3\cos x+\frac{10}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}}+C$
18. $\tan x + \sec x + C$
19. $\tan x - x + C$
20. $2\tan x - 3\sec x + C$
21. C
22. A

EXERCISE 7.2

1. $\log(1+x^2)+C$
2. $\frac{1}{3}(\log|x|)^3+C$
3. $\log|1+\log x|+C$
4. $\cos(\cos x)+C$
5. $-\frac{1}{4a}\cos 2(ax+b)+C$
6. $\frac{2}{3a}(ax+b)^{\frac{3}{2}}+C$
7. $\frac{2}{5}(x+2)^{\frac{5}{2}}-\frac{4}{3}(x+2)^{\frac{3}{2}}+C$

8. $\frac{1}{6}(1+2x^2)^{\frac{3}{2}}+C$ **9.** $\frac{4}{3}(x^2+x+1)^{\frac{3}{2}}+C$ **10.** $2\log\left|\sqrt{x}-1\right|+C$

11. $\frac{2}{3}\sqrt{x+4}(x-8)+C$

12. $\frac{1}{7}(x^3-1)^{\frac{7}{3}}+\frac{1}{4}(x^3-1)^{\frac{4}{3}}+C$ **13.** $-\frac{1}{18(2+3x^3)^2}+C$

14. $\frac{(\log x)^{1-m}}{1-m}+C$ **15.** $-\frac{1}{8}\log|9-4x^2|+C$ **16.** $\frac{1}{2}e^{2x+3}+C$

17. $-\frac{1}{2e^{x^2}}+C$ **18.** $e^{\tan^{-1}x}+C$ **19.** $\log(e^x+e^{-x})+C$

20. $\frac{1}{2}\log(e^{2x}+e^{-2x})+C$ **21.** $\frac{1}{2}\tan(2x-3)-x+C$

22. $-\frac{1}{4}\tan(7-4x)+C$ **23.** $\frac{1}{2}(\sin^{-1}x)^2+C$

24. $\frac{1}{2}\log\left|2\sin x+3\cos x\right|+C$ **25.** $\frac{1}{(1-\tan x)}+C$

26. $2\sin\sqrt{x}+C$ **27.** $\frac{1}{3}(\sin 2x)^{\frac{3}{2}}+C$ **28.** $2\sqrt{1+\sin x}+C$

29. $\frac{1}{2}(\log\sin x)^2+C$ **30.** $-\log\left|1+\cos x\right|+C$ **31.** $\frac{1}{1+\cos x}+C$

32. $\frac{x}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\log\left|\cos x+\sin x\right|+C$ **33.** $\frac{x}{2}-\frac{1}{2}\log\left|\cos x-\sin x\right|+C$

34. $2\sqrt{\tan x}+C$ **35.** $\frac{1}{3}(1+\log x)^3+C$ **36.** $\frac{1}{3}(x+\log x)^3+C$

37. $-\frac{1}{4}\cos(\tan^{-1}x^4)+C$ **38.** D

39. B

EXERCISE 7.3

1. $\frac{x}{2}-\frac{1}{8}\sin(4x+10)+C$

2. $-\frac{1}{14}\cos 7x+\frac{1}{2}\cos x+C$

3. $\frac{1}{4}\left[\frac{1}{12}\sin 12x+x+\frac{1}{8}\sin 8x+\frac{1}{4}\sin 4x\right]+C$

4. $-\frac{1}{2}\cos(2x+1)+\frac{1}{6}\cos^3(2x+1)+C$

5. $\frac{1}{6}\cos^6 x-\frac{1}{4}\cos^4 x+C$

6. $\frac{1}{4}\left[\frac{1}{6}\cos 6x-\frac{1}{4}\cos 4x-\frac{1}{2}\cos 2x\right]+C$

7. $\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{4}\sin 4x-\frac{1}{12}\sin 12x\right]+C$

8. $2\tan\frac{x}{2}-x+C$

9. $x-\tan\frac{x}{2}+C$

10. $\frac{3x}{8}-\frac{1}{4}\sin 2x+\frac{1}{32}\sin 4x+C$

11. $\frac{3x}{8}+\frac{1}{8}\sin 4x+\frac{1}{64}\sin 8x+C$

12. $x-\sin x+C$

13. $2(\sin x+x\cos\alpha)+C$

14. $-\frac{1}{\cos x+\sin x}+C$

15. $\frac{1}{6}\sec^3 2x-\frac{1}{2}\sec 2x+C$

16. $\frac{1}{3}\tan^3 x-\tan x+x+C$

17. $\sec x-\operatorname{cosec} x+C$

18. $\tan x+C$

19. $\log|\tan x|+\frac{1}{2}\tan^2 x+C$

20. $\log|\cos x+\sin x|+C$

21. $\frac{\pi x}{2}-\frac{x^2}{2}+C$

22. $\frac{1}{\sin(a-b)}\log\left|\frac{\cos(x-a)}{\cos(x-b)}\right|+C$

23. A

24. B

EXERCISE 7.4

1. $\tan^{-1}x^3+C$

2. $\frac{1}{2}\log\left|2x+\sqrt{1+4x^2}\right|+C$

3. $\log\left|\dfrac{1}{2-x+\sqrt{x^2-4x+5}}\right|+C$ **4.** $\dfrac{1}{5}\sin^{-1}\dfrac{5x}{3}+C$

5. $\dfrac{3}{2\sqrt{2}}\tan^{-1}\sqrt{2}\,x^2+C$ **6.** $\dfrac{1}{6}\log\left|\dfrac{1+x^3}{1-x^3}\right|+C$

7. $\sqrt{x^2-1}-\log\left|x+\sqrt{x^2-1}\right|+C$ **8.** $\dfrac{1}{3}\log\left|x^3+\sqrt{x^6+a^6}\right|+C$

9. $\log\left|\tan x+\sqrt{\tan^2 x+4}\right|+C$ **10.** $\log\left|x+1+\sqrt{x^2+2x+2}\right|+C$

11. $\dfrac{1}{6}\tan^{-1}\left(\dfrac{3x+1}{2}\right)+C$ **12.** $\sin^{-1}\left(\dfrac{x+3}{4}\right)+C$

13. $\log\left|x-\dfrac{3}{2}+\sqrt{x^2-3x+2}\right|+C$ **14.** $\sin^{-1}\left(\dfrac{2x-3}{\sqrt{41}}\right)+C$

15. $\log\left|x-\dfrac{a+b}{2}+\sqrt{(x-a)(x-b)}\right|+C$

16. $2\sqrt{2x^2+x-3}+C$ **17.** $\sqrt{x^2-1}+2\log\left|x+\sqrt{x^2-1}\right|+C$

18. $\dfrac{5}{6}\log\left|3x^2+2x+1\right|-\dfrac{11}{3\sqrt{2}}\tan^{-1}\left(\dfrac{3x+1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)+C$

19. $6\sqrt{x^2-9x+20}+34\log\left|x-\dfrac{9}{2}+\sqrt{x^2-9x+20}\right|+C$

20. $-\sqrt{4x-x^2}+4\sin^{-1}\left(\dfrac{x-2}{2}\right)+C$

21. $\sqrt{x^2+2x+3}+\log\left|x+1+\sqrt{x^2+2x+3}\right|+C$

22. $\dfrac{1}{2}\log\left|x^2-2x-5\right|+\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\log\left|\dfrac{x-1-\sqrt{6}}{x-1+\sqrt{6}}\right|+C$

23. $5\sqrt{x^2+4x+10}-7\log\left|x+2+\sqrt{x^2+4x+10}\right|+C$

24. B

25. B

EXERCISE 7.5

1. $\log\frac{(x+2)^2}{|x+1|}+C$

2. $\frac{1}{6}\log\left|\frac{x-3}{x+3}\right|+C$

3. $\log|x-1|-5\log|x-2|+4\log|x-3|+C$

4. $\frac{1}{2}\log|x-1|-2\log|x-2|+\frac{3}{2}\log|x-3|+C$

5. $4\log|x+2|-2\log|x+1|+C$

6. $\frac{x}{2}+\log|x|-\frac{3}{4}\log|1-2x|+C$

7. $\frac{1}{2}\log|x-1|-\frac{1}{4}\log(x^2+1)+\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x+C$

8. $\frac{2}{9}\log\left|\frac{x-1}{x+2}\right|-\frac{1}{3(x-1)}+C$

9. $\frac{1}{2}\log\left|\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right|-\frac{4}{x-1}+C$

10. $\frac{5}{2}\log|x+1|-\frac{1}{10}\log|x-1|-\frac{12}{5}\log|2x+3|+C$

11. $\frac{5}{3}\log|x+1|-\frac{5}{2}\log|x+2|+\frac{5}{6}\log|x-2|+C$

12. $\frac{x^2}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\log|x+1|+\frac{3}{2}\log|x-1|+C$

13. $-\log|x-1|+\frac{1}{2}\log(1+x^2)+\tan^{-1}x+C$

14. $3\log|x+2|+\frac{7}{x+2}+C$

15. $\frac{1}{4}\log\left|\frac{x-1}{x+1}\right|-\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x+C$

16. $\frac{1}{n}\log\left|\frac{x^n}{x^n+1}\right|+C$

17. $\log\left|\frac{2-\sin x}{1-\sin x}\right|+C$

18. $x+\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{\sqrt{3}}-3\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{2}+C$

19. $\frac{1}{2}\log\left(\frac{x^2+1}{x^2+3}\right)+C$

20. $\frac{1}{4}\log\left|\frac{x^4-1}{x^4}\right|+C$

21. $\log\left(\frac{e^x-1}{e^x}\right)+C$

22. B

23. A

EXERCISE 7.6

1. $-x\cos x+\sin x+C$

2. $-\frac{x}{3}\cos 3x+\frac{1}{9}\sin 3x+C$

3. $e^x(x^2-2x+2)+C$

4. $\frac{x^2}{2}\log x-\frac{x^2}{4}+C$

5. $\frac{x^2}{2}\log 2x-\frac{x^2}{4}+C$

6. $\frac{x^3}{3}\log x-\frac{x^3}{9}+C$

7. $\frac{1}{4}(2x^2-1)\sin^{-1}x+\frac{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}{4}+C$

8. $\frac{x^2}{2}\tan^{-1}x-\frac{x}{2}+\frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x+C$

9. $(2x^2-1)\frac{\cos^{-1}x}{4}-\frac{x}{4}\sqrt{1-x^2}+C$

10. $\left(\sin^{-1}x\right)^2 x+2\sqrt{1-x^2}\sin^{-1}x-2x+C$

11. $-\sqrt{1-x^2}\cos^{-1}x+x+C$

12. $x\tan x+\log|\cos x|+C$

13. $x\tan^{-1}x-\frac{1}{2}\log(1+x^2)+C$

14. $\frac{x^2}{2}(\log x)^2-\frac{x^2}{2}\log x+\frac{x^2}{4}+C$

15. $\left(\frac{x^3}{3}+x\right)\log x-\frac{x^3}{9}-x+C$

16. $e^x\sin x+C$

17. $\frac{e^x}{1+x}+C$

18. $e^x\tan\frac{x}{2}+C$

19. $\frac{e^x}{x}+C$

20. $\frac{e^x}{(x-1)^2}+C$

21. $\frac{e^{2x}}{5}(2\sin x-\cos x)+C$

22. $2x\tan^{-1}x-\log(1+x^2)+C$

23. A

24. B

EXERCISE 7.7

1. $\frac{1}{2}x\sqrt{4-x^2}+2\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{2}+C$

2. $\frac{1}{4}\sin^{-1}2x+\frac{1}{2}x\sqrt{1-4x^2}+C$

3. $\frac{(x+2)}{2}\sqrt{x^2+4x+6}+\log\left|x+2+\sqrt{x^2+4x+6}\right|+C$

4. $\frac{(x+2)}{2}\sqrt{x^2+4x+1}-\frac{3}{2}\log\left|x+2+\sqrt{x^2+4x+1}\right|+C$

5. $\frac{5}{2}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x+2}{\sqrt{5}}\right)+\frac{x+2}{2}\sqrt{1-4x-x^2}+C$

6. $\frac{(x+2)}{2}\sqrt{x^2+4x-5}-\frac{9}{2}\log\left|x+2+\sqrt{x^2+4x-5}\right|+C$

7. $\frac{(2x-3)}{4}\sqrt{1+3x-x^2}+\frac{13}{8}\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{2x-3}{\sqrt{13}}\right)+C$

8. $\frac{2x+3}{4}\sqrt{x^2+3x}-\frac{9}{8}\log\left|x+\frac{3}{2}+\sqrt{x^2+3x}\right|+C$

9. $\frac{x}{6}\sqrt{x^2+9}+\frac{3}{2}\log\left|x+\sqrt{x^2+9}\right|+C$

10. A

11. D

EXERCISE 7.8

1. 2

2. $\log\frac{3}{2}$

3. $\frac{64}{3}$

4. $\frac{1}{2}$

5. 0

6. $e^4(e-1)$

7. $\frac{1}{2}\log 2$

8. $\log\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}-1}{2-\sqrt{3}}\right)$

9. $\frac{\pi}{2}$

10. $\frac{\pi}{4}$

11. $\frac{1}{2}\log\frac{3}{2}$

12. $\frac{\pi}{4}$

13. $\frac{1}{2}\log 2$ **14.** $\frac{1}{5}\log 6+\frac{3}{\sqrt{5}}\tan^{-1}\sqrt{5}$

15. $\frac{1}{2}(e-1)$ **16.** $5-\frac{5}{2}\left(9\log\frac{5}{4}-\log\frac{3}{2}\right)$

17. $\frac{\pi^4}{1024}+\frac{\pi}{2}+2$ **18.** 0 **19.** $3\log 2+\frac{3\pi}{8}$

20. $1+\frac{4}{\pi}-\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{\pi}$ **21.** D **22.** C

EXERCISE 7.9

1. $\frac{1}{2}\log 2$ **2.** $\frac{64}{231}$ **3.** $\frac{\pi}{2}-\log 2$

4. $\frac{16\sqrt{2}}{15}(\sqrt{2}+1)$ **5.** $\frac{\pi}{4}$ **6.** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{17}}\log\frac{21+5\sqrt{17}}{4}$

7. $\frac{\pi}{8}$ **8.** $\frac{e^2(e^2-2)}{4}$ **9.** D

10. B

EXERCISE 7.10

1. $\frac{\pi}{4}$ **2.** $\frac{\pi}{4}$ **3.** $\frac{\pi}{4}$ **4.** $\frac{\pi}{4}$

5. 29 **6.** 9 **7.** $\frac{1}{(n+1)(n+2)}$

8. $\frac{\pi}{8}\log 2$ **9.** $\frac{16\sqrt{2}}{15}$ **10.** $\frac{\pi}{2}\log\frac{1}{2}$ **11.** $\frac{\pi}{2}$

12. π **13.** 0 **14.** 0 **15.** 0

16. $-\pi\log 2$ **17.** $\frac{a}{2}$ **18.** 5 **20.** C

21. C

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISE ON CHAPTER 7

1. $\frac{1}{2}\log\left|\frac{x^2}{1-x^2}\right|+C$

2. $\frac{2}{3(a-b)}\left[(x+a)^{\frac{3}{2}}-(x+b)^{\frac{3}{2}}\right]+C$

3. $-\frac{2}{a}\sqrt{\frac{(a-x)}{x}}+C$

4. $-\left(1+\frac{1}{x^4}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}}+C$

5. $2\sqrt{x}-3x^{\frac{1}{3}}+6x^{\frac{1}{6}}-6\log(1+x^{\frac{1}{6}})+C$

6. $-\frac{1}{2}\log|x+1|+\frac{1}{4}\log(x^2+9)+\frac{3}{2}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{3}+C$

7. $\sin a\log|\sin(x-a)|+x\cos a+C$

8. $\frac{x^3}{3}+C$

9. $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{\sin x}{2}\right)+C$

10. $-\frac{1}{2}\sin 2x+C$

11. $\frac{1}{\sin(a-b)}\log\left|\frac{\cos(x+b)}{\cos(x+a)}\right|+C$

12. $\frac{1}{4}\sin^{-1}(x^4)+C$

13. $\log\left(\frac{1+e^x}{2+e^x}\right)+C$

14. $\frac{1}{3}\tan^{-1}x-\frac{1}{6}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{2}+C$

15. $-\frac{1}{4}\cos^4 x+C$

16. $\frac{1}{4}\log(x^4+1)+C$

17. $\frac{[f(ax+b)]^{n+1}}{a(n+1)}+C$

18. $\frac{-2}{\sin\alpha}\sqrt{\frac{\sin(x+\alpha)}{\sin x}}+C$

19. $-2\sqrt{1-x}+\cos^{-1}\sqrt{x}+\sqrt{x-x^2}+C$

20. $e^x\tan x+C$

21. $-2\log|x+1|-\frac{1}{x+1}+3\log|x+2|+C$

22. $\frac{1}{2}\left[x\cos^{-1}x-\sqrt{1-x^2}\right]+C$

23. $-\frac{1}{3}\left(1+\frac{1}{x^2}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}\left[\log\left(1+\frac{1}{x^2}\right)-\frac{2}{3}\right]+C$

24. $e^{\frac{\pi}{2}}$

25. $\frac{\pi}{8}$

26. $\frac{\pi}{6}$

27. $2\sin^{-1}\frac{(\sqrt{3}-1)}{2}$

28. $\frac{4\sqrt{2}}{3}$

29. $\frac{1}{40}\log 9$

30. $\frac{\pi}{2}-1$

31. $\frac{19}{2}$

38. A

39. B

40. D

EXERCISE 8.1

1. 12π **2.** 6π **3.** A **4.** B

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 8

1. (i) $\frac{7}{3}$ (ii) 624.8

2. 9 **3.** 4 **4.** D **5.** C

EXERCISE 9.1

1. Order 4; Degree not defined

2. Order 1; Degree 1

3. Order 2; Degree 1

4. Order 2; Degree not defined

5. Order 2; Degree 1

6. Order 3; Degree 2

7. Order 3; Degree 1

8. Order 1; Degree 1

9. Order 2; Degree 1

10. Order 2; Degree 1

11. D

12. A

EXERCISE 9.2

11. D

12. D

EXERCISE 9.3

1. $y = 2\tan\frac{x}{2} - x + C$
2. $y = 2\sin(x + C)$
3. $y = 1 + Ae^{-x}$
4. $\tan x \tan y = C$
5. $y = \log(e^x + e^{-x}) + C$
6. $\tan^{-1} y = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + C$
7. $y = e^{cx}$
8. $x^{-4} + y^{-4} = C$
9. $y = x\sin^{-1}x + \sqrt{1-x^2} + C$
10. $\tan y = C(1 - e^x)$
11. $y = \frac{1}{4}\log\left[(x+1)^2(x^2+1)^3\right] - \frac{1}{2}\tan^{-1}x + 1$
12. $y = \frac{1}{2}\log\left(\frac{x^2-1}{x^2}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\log\frac{3}{4}$
13. $\cos\left(\frac{y-2}{x}\right) = a$
14. $y = \sec x$
15. $2y - 1 = e^x(\sin x - \cos x)$
16. $y - x + 2 = \log(x^2(y+2)^2)$
17. $y^2 - x^2 = 4$
18. $(x+4)^2 = y + 3$
19. $(63t + 27)^{\frac{1}{3}}$
20. 6.93%
21. Rs 1648
22. $\frac{2\log 2}{\log\left(\frac{11}{10}\right)}$
23. A

EXERCISE 9.4

1. $(x - y)^2 = Cx\, e^{\frac{-y}{x}}$
2. $y = x\log|x| + Cx$
3. $\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\log(x^2 + y^2) + C$
4. $x^2 + y^2 = Cx$
5. $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}\log\left|\frac{x+\sqrt{2}y}{x-\sqrt{2}y}\right| = \log|x| + C$
6. $y + \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = Cx^2$
7. $xy\cos\left|\frac{y}{x}\right| = C$
8. $x\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)\right] = C\sin\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$

9. $cy = \log \left|\frac{y}{x}\right| - 1$ **10.** $ye^{\frac{x}{y}} + x = C$

11. $\log(x^2 + y^2) + 2\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x} = \frac{\pi}{2} + \log 2$

12. $y + 2x = 3x^2 y$ **13.** $\cot\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \log|ex|$

14. $\cos\left(\frac{y}{x}\right) = \log|ex|$ **15.** $y = \frac{2x}{1 - \log|x|} (x \neq 0, x \neq e)$

16. C **17.** D

EXERCISE 9.5

1. $y = \frac{1}{5}(2\sin x - \cos x) + C\, e^{-2x}$ **2.** $y = e^{-2x} + Ce^{-3x}$

3. $xy = \frac{x^4}{4} + C$ **4.** $y(\sec x + \tan x) = \sec x + \tan x - x + C$

5. $y = (\tan x - 1) + C e^{-\tan x}$ **6.** $y = \frac{x^2}{16}(4\log|x| - 1) + Cx^{-2}$

7. $y\log x = \frac{-2}{x}(1 + \log|x|) + C$ **8.** $y = (1+x)^{-1} \log|\sin x| + C(1+x^2)^{-1}$

9. $y = \frac{1}{x} - \cot x + \frac{C}{x\sin x}$ **10.** $(x + y + 1) = C\, e^y$

11. $x = \frac{y^2}{3} + \frac{C}{y}$ **12.** $x = 3y^2 + Cy$

13. $y = \cos x - 2\cos^2 x$ **14.** $y(1 + x^2) = \tan^{-1} x - \frac{\pi}{4}$

15. $y = 4\sin^3 x - 2\sin^2 x$ **16.** $x + y + 1 = e^x$

17. $y = 4 - x - 2\, e^x$ **18.** C **19.** D

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 9

1. (i) Order 2; Degree 1 (ii) Order 1; Degree 3

(iii) Order 4; Degree not defined

4. $\sin^{-1}y + \sin^{-1}x = C$

6. $\cos y = \frac{\sec x}{\sqrt{2}}$

7. $\tan^{-1} y + \tan^{-1}(e^x) = \frac{\pi}{2}$

8. $e^{\frac{x}{y}} = y + C$

9. $\log |x - y| = x + y + 1$

10. $ye^{2\sqrt{x}} = (2\sqrt{x} + C)$

11. $y \sin x = 2x^2 - \frac{\pi^2}{2} (\sin x \neq 0)$

12. $y = \log\left|\frac{2x+1}{x+1}\right|, x \neq -1$

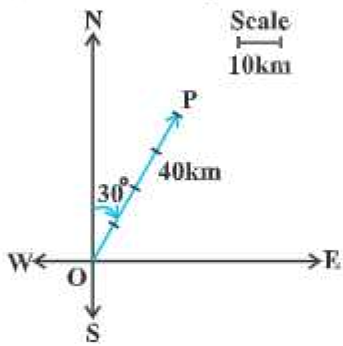
13. C

14. C

15. C

EXERCISE 10.1

1. In the adjoining figure, the vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ represents the required displacement.



2. (i) scalar (ii) vector (iii) scalar (iv) scalar (v) scalar
(vi) vector

3. (i) scalar (ii) scalar (iii) vector (iv) vector (v) scalar

4. (i) Vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$ are coinitial
(ii) Vectors $\vec{b}$ and $\vec{d}$ are equal
(iii) Vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{c}$ are collinear but not equal

5. (i) True (ii) False (iii) False (iv) False

EXERCISE 10.2

1. $|\vec{a}| = \sqrt{3}, |\vec{b}| = \sqrt{62}, |\vec{c}| = 1$

2. An infinite number of possible answers.

3. An infinite number of possible answers.

4. $x = 2, y = 3$

5. –7 and 6; $-7\hat{i}$ and $6\hat{j}$

6. $-4\hat{j} - \hat{k}$

7. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{j} + \frac{2}{\sqrt{6}}\hat{k}$

8. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{j} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{k}$

9. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\hat{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\hat{k}$

10. $\frac{40}{\sqrt{30}}\hat{i} - \frac{8}{\sqrt{30}}\hat{j} + \frac{16}{\sqrt{30}}\hat{k}$

12. $\frac{1}{\sqrt{14}}, \frac{2}{\sqrt{14}}, \frac{3}{\sqrt{14}}$

13. $-\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{2}{3}, \frac{2}{3}$

15. (i) $-\frac{1}{3}\hat{i} + \frac{4}{3}\hat{j} + \frac{1}{3}\hat{k}$ (ii) $-3\hat{i} + 3\hat{k}$

16. $3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$

18. (C)

19. (B), (C), (D)

EXERCISE 10.3

1. $\frac{\pi}{4}$

2. $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{5}{7}\right)$

3. 0

4. $\frac{60}{\sqrt{114}}$

6. $\frac{16\sqrt{2}}{3\sqrt{7}}, \frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3\sqrt{7}}$

7. $6|\vec{a}|^2 + 11\vec{a}.\vec{b} - 35|\vec{b}|^2$

8. $|\vec{a}| = 1, |\vec{b}| = 1$

9. $\sqrt{13}$

10. 8

12. Vector $\vec{b}$ can be any vector

13. $\frac{-3}{2}$

14. Take any two non-zero perpendicular vectors $\vec{a}$ and $\vec{b}$

15. $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{10}{\sqrt{102}}\right)$

18. (D)

EXERCISE 10.4

1. $19\sqrt{2}$

2. $\pm\frac{2}{3}\hat{i} \quad \frac{2}{3}\hat{j} \quad \frac{1}{3}\hat{k}$

3. $\frac{\pi}{3}; \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{2}$

5. $3, \frac{27}{2}$

6. Either $|\vec{a}| = 0$ or $|\vec{b}| = 0$

8. No; take any two nonzero collinear vectors

9. $\dfrac{\sqrt{61}}{2}$ **10.** $15\sqrt{2}$ **11.** (B) **12.** (C)

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 10

1. $\dfrac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\hat{i}+\dfrac{1}{2}\hat{j}$

2. $x_2-x_1, y_2-y_1, z_2-z_1; \sqrt{(x_2-x_1)^2+(y_2-y_1)^2+(z_2-z_1)^2}$

3. $\dfrac{-5}{2}\hat{i}+\dfrac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}\hat{j}$

4. No; take $\vec{a}$, $\vec{b}$ and $\vec{c}$ to represent the sides of a triangle.

5. $\pm\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ **6.** $\dfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{10}\,\hat{i}+\dfrac{\sqrt{10}}{2}\hat{j}$ **7.** $\dfrac{3}{\sqrt{22}}\hat{i}-\dfrac{3}{\sqrt{22}}\hat{j}+\dfrac{2}{\sqrt{22}}\hat{k}$

8. 2 : 3 **9.** $3\vec{a}+5\vec{b}$ **10.** $\dfrac{1}{7}(3\hat{i}-6\hat{j}+2\hat{k})$; $11\sqrt{5}$

12. $\dfrac{1}{3}(160\hat{i}-5\hat{j}+70\hat{k})$ **13.** $\lambda=1$ **16.** (B)

17. (D) **18.** (C) **19.** (B)

EXERCISE 11.1

1. $0, \dfrac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}, \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ **2.** $\pm\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}, \pm\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}, \pm\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ **3.** $\dfrac{-9}{11}, \dfrac{6}{11}, \dfrac{-2}{11}$

5. $\dfrac{-2}{\sqrt{17}}, \dfrac{-2}{\sqrt{17}}, \dfrac{3}{17}$; $\dfrac{-2}{\sqrt{17}}, \dfrac{-3}{\sqrt{17}}, \dfrac{-2}{\sqrt{17}}$; $\dfrac{4}{\sqrt{42}}, \dfrac{5}{\sqrt{42}}, \dfrac{-1}{\sqrt{42}}$

EXERCISE 11.2

4. $\vec{r}=\hat{i}+2\hat{j}+3\hat{k}+\lambda(3\hat{i}+2\hat{j}-2\hat{k})$, where λ is a real number

5. $\vec{r}=2\hat{i}-\hat{j}+4\hat{k}+\lambda(\hat{i}+2\hat{j}-\hat{k})$ and cartesian form is

$$\frac{x-2}{1}=\frac{y+1}{2}=\frac{z-4}{-1}$$

6. $\frac{x+2}{3} = \frac{y-4}{5} = \frac{z+5}{6}$

7. $\vec{r} = (5\hat{i} - 4\hat{j} + 6\hat{k}) + \lambda(3\hat{i} + 7\hat{j} + 2\hat{k})$

8. (i) $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{19}{21}\right)$ (ii) $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{8}{5\sqrt{3}}\right)$

9. (i) $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{26}{9\sqrt{38}}\right)$ (ii) $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)$

10. $p = \frac{70}{11}$ 12. $\frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}$ 13. $2\sqrt{29}$

14. $\frac{3}{\sqrt{19}}$ 15. $\frac{8}{\sqrt{29}}$

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 11

1. 90° 2. $\frac{x}{1} = \frac{y}{0} = \frac{z}{0}$ 3. $k = \frac{-10}{7}$

4. 9 5. $\vec{r} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} - 4\hat{k} + \lambda(2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 6\hat{k})$

EXERCISE 12.1

1. Maximum Z = 16 at (0, 4)
2. Minimum Z = – 12 at (4, 0)
3. Maximum Z = $\frac{235}{19}$ at $\left(\frac{20}{19}, \frac{45}{19}\right)$
4. Minimum Z = 7 at $\left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$
5. Maximum Z = 18 at (4, 3)
6. Minimum Z = 6 at all the points on the line segment joining the points (6, 0) and (0, 3).

7. Minimum Z = 300 at (60, 0);

Maximum Z = 600 at all the points on the line segment joining the points (120, 0) and (60, 30).

8. Minimum Z = 100 at all the points on the line segment joining the points (0, 50) and (20, 40);

Maximum Z = 400 at (0, 200)

9. Z has no maximum value

10. No feasible region, hence no maximum value of Z.

EXERCISE 13.1

1. $P(E|F)=\frac{2}{3}, P(F|E)=\frac{1}{3}$ **2.** $P(A|B)=\frac{16}{25}$

3. (i) 0.32 (ii) 0.64 (iii) 0.98

4. $\frac{11}{26}$

5. (i) $\frac{4}{11}$ (ii) $\frac{4}{5}$ (iii) $\frac{2}{3}$

6. (i) $\frac{1}{2}$ (ii) $\frac{3}{7}$ (iii) $\frac{6}{7}$

7. (i) 1 (ii) 0

8. $\frac{1}{6}$ **9.** 1 **10.** (a) $\frac{1}{3}$, (b) $\frac{1}{9}$

11. (i) $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3}$ (ii) $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{2}{3}$ (iii) $\frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{4}$

12. (i) $\frac{1}{2}$ (ii) $\frac{1}{3}$ **13.** $\frac{5}{9}$

14. $\frac{1}{15}$ **15.** 0 **16.** C **17.** D

EXERCISE 13.2

1. $\frac{3}{25}$ **2.** $\frac{25}{102}$ **3.** $\frac{44}{91}$

4. A and B are independent **5.** A and B are not independent

6. E and F are not independent

7. (i) $p=\frac{1}{10}$ (ii) $p=\frac{1}{5}$

8. (i) 0.12 (ii) 0.58 (iii) 0.3 (iv) 0.4

9. $\frac{3}{8}$ **10.** A and B are not independent

11. (i) 0.18 (ii) 0.12 (iii) 0.72 (iv) 0.28

12. $\frac{7}{8}$ **13.** (i) $\frac{16}{81}$, (ii) $\frac{20}{81}$, (iii) $\frac{40}{81}$

14. (i) $\frac{2}{3}$, (ii) $\frac{1}{2}$ **15.** (i), (ii) **16.** (a) $\frac{1}{5}$, (b) $\frac{1}{3}$, (c) $\frac{1}{2}$

17. D **18.** B

EXERCISE 13.3

1. $\frac{1}{2}$ **2.** $\frac{2}{3}$ **3.** $\frac{9}{13}$ **4.** $\frac{12}{13}$

5. $\frac{22}{133}$ **6.** $\frac{4}{9}$ **7.** $\frac{1}{52}$ **8.** $\frac{1}{4}$

9. $\frac{2}{9}$ **10.** $\frac{8}{11}$ **11.** $\frac{5}{34}$ **12.** $\frac{11}{50}$

13. A **14.** C

Miscellaneous Exercise on Chapter 13

1. (i) 1 (ii) 0

2. (i) $\frac{1}{3}$ (ii) $\frac{1}{2}$

3. $\frac{20}{21}$

4. $1-\sum_{r=7}^{10} {}^{10}C_r (0.9)^r (0.1)^{10-r}$

5. $\frac{2}{7}$

6. $\frac{1}{15}, \frac{2}{5}, \frac{8}{15}$

7. $\frac{14}{29}$

8. $\frac{3}{16}$

9. (i) 0.5 (ii) 0.05

10. $\frac{16}{31}$

11. A

12. C

13. B

Notes